THE ROMAN FORUM — *After Von Falke*

INTRODUCTORY LATIN

BY

FRANK PRESCOTT MOULTON, A.M.

PREFACE

CONCENTRATION and economy of effort are the first conspicuous aims of this book. Things naturally belonging together are grouped together: third declension nouns are followed by third declension adjectives, and the declension of adjectives by the comparison of adjectives. No two difficult and confusing subjects — like, for instance, the conjugation of *iō*-verbs and nouns with *i*-stems — are brought into the same chapter.

No division or grouping of topics can possibly be so made that each chapter will be just enough for a lesson. Therefore into each chapter are grouped such subjects and such exercises as should be studied together, and the teacher is left free to give to each chapter whatever time is necessary. Many chapters will require more than one lesson.

Forms and constructions are introduced, so far as possible, only when they can afterwards be continually used. Connected Latin for reading is introduced early — but not till preparation for it has been made ; after being once introduced, it is kept up.

The pronouns are not introduced till after connected discourse, for their meanings and force cannot be understood from detached sentences. When the pronouns are introduced, they are treated with such discrimination and precision that the pupil gains a distinct and accurate knowledge of their use and meanings.

After the second declension the verb is emphasized. *Laudō* and *moneō* are studied at the same time, for the two can be learned together just as easily as either alone. Several lessons are then concentrated on the verb, till the entire indicative of three conjugations is learned. This knowledge of verb forms makes possible a greater variety of sentences in connection with the study of the third declension, adjectives, pronouns, etc.

In the perfect system all verbs are formed alike and are therefore learned together. So, later, the subjunctive, imperative, and participles of all conjugations are learned together, with a careful treatment of the method of forming the different parts from the proper stem. After all parts of the verb have been given separately, a verb of each conjugation is reviewed in its entirety.

The treatment of the subjunctive and participles is new, but simple and rational. The common meaning and uses of the subjunctive, as far as possible, are treated first and the other meanings developed from these. The same method is followed in the treatment of the participle.

The *tenses* of the subjunctive, infinitive, and participles are not made so prominent at first as to confuse and overwhelm the pupil while he is trying to learn the *mood*. Later the tenses, including tense sequence, are very carefully and clearly taught.

Indirect discourse is developed so naturally that a pupil can see that indirect discourse is merely the enlargement of the object clause after a verb of knowing, thinking, etc.

The ablative absolute is treated simply and gradually, like other case constructions. It has been customary to say too much about this construction, and bewilder the pupil by giving too many uses at once. Of course the participle with a noun in the ablative often implies cause, condition, and so forth; but this idea has nothing to do with the *case*, for a participle in any case may have the same force. Again, the pupil gets the idea that the participle in the ablative absolute construction means *having been*. Any one who teaches advanced Latin composition realizes the difficulty of correcting this false idea. To avoid the mistaken notion, the ablative absolute is taught progressively and naturally, from examples occurring in connected reading; and nouns with present active participles, or others, are purposely used. (See 333, 334; 344, n. 1; 412, n. 1; 414, n. 3; 420, n. 3 and 4.)

A summary review of each subject throughout the book is given especial emphasis. In connection with some of the reviews a few anecdotes and stories are introduced to give variety and interest to the work.

The great difficulty for the young pupil in his study of Latin — the transition from detached sentences to a real Latin author — is largely overcome by the plan of this book. The sentences used in the exercises, after the first few chapters, are taken mostly from some Latin author, generally Cæsar. As soon as the advancement of the pupil will admit — no sooner — real Cæsar is introduced, at first much simplified, then less and less changed, till the passages are very near to the original. Many of the uses of moods, tenses, cases of nouns, and indefinite pronouns are taught in connection with these connected passages instead of by the usual made-up sentences. This forms better material and serves to economize effort. Opportunity is given to teach some things in preparation for the second-year work not ordinarily covered in the first year. For example, temporal clauses, and the dative with verbs used impersonally in the passive, are made especially clear. If, however, any teacher wishes to defer the treatment of temporal clauses and conditions till the second year, these chapters may be omitted

The reading lessons have a great advantage over mere anecdotes, because they have continuity of structure and style, and a pupil will gradually come to feel, and to look for, that logical sequence so characteristic of Latin discourse, the observance of which is vitally essential to intelligent translation.

More material for translation is provided, and somewhat fewer and shorter exercises to be written in Latin, than in most introductory books. Every class may take with care and thoroughness what English exercises are given, and both teacher and pupil can feel the satisfaction of having done everything in the book. To most teachers the effort to teach Latin composition beyond simple exercises sufficient to illustrate the rules of syntax, especially during the first two years, does not bring satisfactory returns. If, however, any teacher wishes to give his pupils further practice, he can with excellent effect have them turn back into Latin the translation of the Latin exercises.

The seventy-four chapters of this book will require perhaps a little more time than the same number of chapters in some other books, but the gain is more than commensurate; for, when the

pupil finishes the exercises, he will have read an epitome of the first thirty chapters of Cæsar containing a connected account of the whole Helvetian war. And the work is so gradual and progressive that he will not realize any break in his work when taking up Cæsar. In short, the reading lessons furnish not only a preparation for Cæsar, but a preparation in Cæsar.

A few fables and some early Roman history, adapted directly from Livy by the author, are given at the end of the book. No young student of Latin ought to miss this, for no other Latin so quickly introduces the learner into the method of thought and speech of the Romans. Yet, if for any reason the teacher wishes to shorten the course, the seventy-four chapters will give the pupils such an acquaintance with the vocabulary and style of Cæsar that the class can begin at once the reading of that author with a feeling of confidence.

It has been the constant aim in preparing this book to secure clearness of statement, adaptation to the class-room, completeness, accuracy, and logical development. The degree of success with which this object has been secured is due largely to the helpful suggestions and criticisms offered by those who have read the manuscript and proof.

<div style="text-align: right">

FRANK PRESCOTT MOULTON.

</div>

HARTFORD HIGH SCHOOL,
    March 29, 1907.

CONTENTS

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTORY LATIN

INTRODUCTORY LATIN

CHAPTER I

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no **w**.

2. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. All other letters are consonants.

NOTE. — Vowels are letters representing sounds that can be uttered by themselves alone. A consonant can be sounded only in combination with a vowel

3. Consonants are classified as :

MUTES	**b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t.**
LIQUIDS	**l, m, n, r.**
SIBILANT	**s.**
DOUBLE CONSONANTS . .	**x** = **cs** or **gs**, and **z** = **ds.**

PRONUNCIATION

Vowels

4. A vowel in Latin has only one sound. This sound is sometimes prolonged and sometimes shortened A straight mark (⁻), called a *macron,* placed over a vowel shows that the vowel is long ; a curved mark (˘), called a *breve,* shows that the vowel is short.

NOTE. — As all vowels are either long or short, for convenience the long vowels only are marked; all unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

5. Vowels

Long **a** (ā) is sounded like *a* in *father*;	short **a** (ă) as *a* in *idea*.
Long **e** (ē) is sounded like *e* in *they*;	short **e** (ĕ) as *e* in *then*.
Long **i** (ī) is sounded like *i* in *machine*;	short **i** (ĭ) as *i* in *pin*.
Long **o** (ō) is sounded like *o* in *note*,	short **o** (ŏ) as *o* in *obey*
Long **u** (ū) is sounded like *oo* in *pool*;	short **u** (ŭ) as *u* in *pull*.

Diphthongs

6. A diphthong is the combination of two vowels in one syllable. Diphthongs have the following sounds:

ae is sounded like *ai* in *aisle*.
oe is sounded like *oi* in *boil*.
au is sounded like *ou* in *our*.
eu is sounded like *eu* in *feud*.
ei is sounded like *ei* in *eight*.

NOTE. — When two vowels, which ordinarily make a diphthong, are to be pronounced separately, two dots, called *diæresis*, are placed over the second vowel to show that the vowels make two syllables instead of one, as · coercēre. pronounced co-er-cē-re, *to coerce* or *restrain*.

Consonants

7. Consonants are sounded as in English except that b before s or t has the sound of *p*.

c is always hard like	*c* in *come*;	never like *c* in *cent*.
g is always hard like	*g* in *get*;	never like *g* in *gem*.
s is always sharp like	*s* in *this*;	never like *s* in *his*.
t is always like	*t* in *native*;	never like *t* in *nation*.
v is always like	*w* in *wine*;	never like *v* in *vine*.
ch is always like	*ch* in *chasm*;	never like *ch* in *chant*.

I-Consonant

8. When i is followed by a vowel in the same syllable, it has the force of a consonant. The i-consonant (or j, which is sometimes used in place of it) is pronounced as *y* in *yes, your, yard,* etc., as: iacet, pronounced yá-ket.

9. Pronounce the following words according to the rules given :

1. Dūcō, *I lead.* 2. Cantūs avium amāmus, *the songs of birds we love.* 3. Mors est certa, *death is certain.* 4. Hīc liber est tuus, *this book is yours.* 5. Achillēs erat audāx vir, *Achilles was a bold man.* 6 Ītalia est in Eurōpā, *Italy is in Europe.* ,7. Prīma pars īnsulae, *the first part of the island.* 8. Hōc genus pugnae, *this kind of fighting.* 9. Hae nātiōnēs, *these nations.* 10. Is quī, *he who.* 11. Aristīdēs vocābātur Iūstus, *Aristides was called the Just.* 12. Urbs Trōiāna ā Graecīs obsidēbātur, *the Trojan city was besieged by the Greeks.*

CHAPTER II

SYLLABLES

10. Two vowels with a consonant between them are never pronounced in one syllable. Compare the English *more,* one syllable, with the Latin mōre, pronounced mó-re, two syllables ; the English *reside,* two syllables, and the Latin resīde, pronounced re-sí-de, three syllables ; the English *delicate,* three syllables, with the Latin dēlicāte, pronounced dē-li-cá-tē, four syllables. *Therefore in a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs.*

11. *a.* A single consonant in Latin is always pronounced with the vowel, or diphthong, that follows it, as : referō, pronounced ré-fe-rō ; domine, pronounced dó-mi-ne.

b. Doubled consonants, like ll or ss, must be separated and each distinctly sounded, as. ille, íl-le; missus, mís-sus. This is like the English *ill-luck* rather than *hilly*; *mis-sent* rather than *missile*; *rat-trap* rather than *rattle*.

c When two or more different consonants come together, as many as can be pronounced together are sounded with the following vowel, as: restringō, re-strín-gō.

d. But compound words are divided so as to show the parts of the compound, as: ab-est (ab, *away* + est, *he is*), *he is away*

12. Divide into syllables these words: dōnō, mınimus, lēgātus, mittō, referre, cōnstanter, patris, intrā, ratiō, dominus, sagitta.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

13. *a*. A vowel before a vowel or h is short, as: dĕa, *goddess*; nĭhil, *nothing*.

NOTE. — The few exceptions to this rule will be propeily maiked as they occui.

b. A vowel is short before nd or nt, as: cŏntĕndĕnt, *they will contend*.

c. Diphthongs are always long, as: fōēdus, *treaty*.

d. A vowel, formed by contracting two vowels into one, is long, as: cōgō (cŏ + ăgō), *I gather*.

e. A vowel is long before nf or ns, as: īnfāns, *child*.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

14. A syllable is long or short according to the time it takes to pronounce it properly.

a. A syllable is long by nature if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel, as: audāx, *bold*.

b. A syllable is long by position if its vowel is followed by two or more consonants (except a mute before *l* or *r*),

even though the vowel itself be short, as: impéllunt, *they impel.*

NOTE. — The reason for this is evident; if there are two or more consonants (except a mute with *l* or *r*), one at least of these consonants must be pronounced with the vowel before it, and it takes longer to pronounce distinctly a vowel and a consonant than to pronounce a vowel alone. *But the vowel itself must nevertheless be pronounced short.*

Names of Syllables

15. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult is called the *antepenult*.

Enclitics

16. An enclitic is a word, generally of one syllable, attached to another word. The most common are -ne, the sign of a question, -que, *and*, -ve, *or*, and sometimes cum, *with*, as: mēcum, *with me*; vidēsne, *do you see?*

CHAPTER III

ACCENT

17. *a.* Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, as: dŏnum, *gift*; déa, *goddess*.

b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long; on the antepenult, if the penult is short, as: amāmus, reférre, hómĭnēs, fīlius.

c. When an enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable before the enclitic, whether that syllable is long or short, as: fīliáque.

18. Divide into syllables, mark the accent, and pronounce the following words: puer, puella, dominus, cōnferō, cōnferre, fīlius, contulī, conlātus, nātiō, deaque, habēsne, Orgetorīx, Achillēs, Pompēius.

GENDER

19. Gender in Latin is either Natural, as in English, or merely Grammatical, thus :

a. Names of males are masculine, names of females are feminine.

b. Names of objects neither male nor female, called *neuter* (that is, *neither* gender) in English, are masculine, feminine, or neuter, as indicated by certain endings. (These endings are given later.)

INFLECTION

20. Inflection is the change made in the form of a word to indicate case, number, mood, tense, etc

a. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles, to denote gender, number, and case, is called *declension.*

b. The inflection of verbs to denote voice, mood, tense, number, and person is called *conjugation.*

c. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections have no inflection, and are sometimes called *particles.*

Declension

21. Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles are declined in two numbers, *singular* and *plural;* and in five cases, *nominative, genitive, dative, accusative,* and *ablative.*

a. The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence.

b. The Genitive corresponds to the English Possessive or the Objective with the preposition *of.*

c. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object. It may usually be translated by *to* or *for.*

d. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object of a verb. It is used also after some prepositions.

e. The Ablative may generally be translated by *with, by, from.* It is used also with many prepositions.

NOTE — There is also a Vocative case, used, however, only in addressing a person; and a Locative case, used only with names of cities and a very few other words. These two cases will be given and explained later, as they are needed.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER. — No division of grouping of topics can possibly be so made that each chapter will be just enough for a lesson in all schools. Therefore into each chapter are grouped such subjects and such exercises as should be studied together, and the teacher is left free to give to each chapter whatever time is necessary. Many chapters will require more than a lesson. For further suggestions see preface.
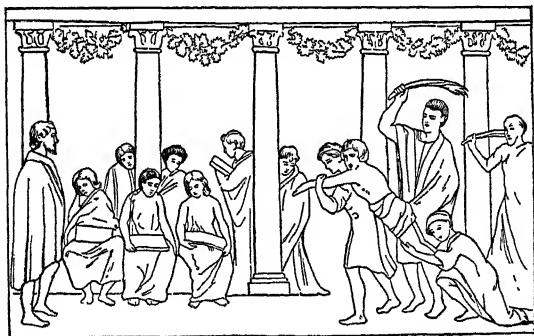
SCHOLA ROMANA — A ROMAN SCHOOL

CHAPTER IV

FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in -ā-

22.   *Paradigm*

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puella, *a girl* (as subject)	-a
Gen.	puellae, *of a girl* or *a girl's*	-ae
Dat.	puellae, *to* or *for a girl*	-ae
Acc.	puellam, *a girl* (as object)	-am
Abl.	puellā, *with, by, from, a girl*	-ā
	PLURAL	
Nom.	puellae, *girls* (as subject)	-ae
Gen.	puellārum, *of girls* or *girls'*	-ārum
Dat.	puellīs, *to* or *for girls*	-īs
Acc.	puellās, *girls* (as object)	-ās
Abl.	puellīs, *with, by, from, girls*	-īs

a. There is no article in Latin. Therefore puella may be translated *a girl* or *the girl*; the plural, puellae, *girls* or *the girls*.

b. That part of the word which is not changed by inflection is the base, as puell-. To the base is often added a vowel which helps in inflection. This vowel is called the stem-vowel, or characteristic vowel. The base, with the stem-vowel added, is the stem; thus the base puell-, + the stem-vowel -ā-, gives the stem puellā-. The terminations consist of case-endings combined with the stem-vowel; but sometimes the stem-vowel disappears, and sometimes the case-ending.

c. The base may be found by dropping the termination from the genitive singular.

d. In Latin adjectives are declined like nouns, as follows :

23.   *Paradigm*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	hasta longa, *a long spear*	hastae longae, *long spears*
Gen.	hastae longae, *of a long spear*	hastārum longārum, *of long spears*
Dat.	hastae longae, *to* or *for a long spear*	hastīs longīs, *to* or *for long spears*
Acc.	hastam longam, *a long spear*	hastās longās, *long spears*
Abl	hastā longā, *with*, etc., *a long spear*	hastīs longīs, *with*, etc., *long spears*

24. RULE OF GENDER. *Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.* See 19, *a* and *b.*

25.   VOCABULARY

hasta, f., *spear.*   stella, f., *star.*
tuba, f., *trumpet.*   āla, f., *wing.*
aquila, f., *eagle.*   magna, adj., *large, great.*
agricola, m., *farmer.*   longa, adj., *long.*
lūna, f., *moon.*   parva, adj., *small, little.*
rēgīna, f., *queen.*   et, conj., *and.*

Decline the nouns and adjectives in the vocabulary. Then, observing the meaning of the cases as given in the paradigms, translate the following

EXERCISES

26. 1. Tuba agricolae. 2. Tubā et hastā rēgīnae. 3. Lūnae et stellārum. 4. Aquilārum ālae longae. 5. Tubīs et hastīs longīs. 6. Puellae tubā parvā. 7. Tubārum et hastārum. 8. Hastā longā. 9. Parvārum puellārum tubae. 10. Magnīs tubīs agricolārum.

27. 1. The farmer's spear. 2. By the moon and stars.

3. For the queen   4. Of the moon and stars.   5. With a small trumpet and a long spear.   6. With the farmer's long spears.   7. To the moon and stars.   8. The long wings of the eagle.

CHAPTER V

FIRST DECLENSION (*continued*)

CONJUGATION OF LAUDŌ: Present Indicative Active

28.   *Paradigm*

PERSON	SINGULAR	PERSONAL ENDINGS
1st.	laudō, *I praise, am praising, do praise*	**-ō,** *I*
2d.	laudās, *you praise, are praising, do praise*	**-s,** *you (thou)*
3d.	laudat, *he praises, is praising, does praise*	**-t,** *he*
	PLURAL	
1st.	laudāmus, *we praise, are praising, do praise*	**-mus,** *we*
2d.	laudātis, *you praise, are praising, do praise*	**-tis,** *you*
3d.	laudant, *they praise, are praising, do praise*	**-nt,** *they*

a. The present stem of **laudō** is **laudā-**. The stem-vowel -ā- is dropped before -ō in the first person.

b. The base **laud-** (compare 22, *b*), which appears in all forms of the verb, is sometimes called the verb-stem.

c. As each person has a special personal ending, the subject, when a pronoun, is not expressed, unless it be emphatic. Learn the list of personal endings.

d. In Latin there is but one form for the present tense. So **laudat** stands for the simple form, progressive form, or emphatic form, and may mean *he praises, he is praising,* or *he does praise.* To make the verb interrogative, **-ne** (16) is attached, as: **laudāsne?** *do you praise?*

RULES OF SYNTAX

29. *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.*

30. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative case.*

31. *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

NOTE. — A finite verb is a verb not in the infinitive mood. A transitive verb is one that admits of a direct object.

32.   VOCABULARY

poēta, m., *poet.*	portō, *carry.*
aqua, f., *water.*	pugnō, *fight.*
sagitta, f., *arrow.*	vocō, *call.*
rosa, f., *rose.*	arō, *plow*
terra, f., *land.*	nōn, adv., *not.*

EXERCISES

33. 1. Portās, portāmus, portantne? 2. Pugnātis, nōn pugnat, hastam longam portat. 3. Hastīs et sagittīs nōn pugnāmus. 4. Poēta rēgīnam laudat. 5. Arantne agricolae terram? 6. Rēgīna agricolae rosās magnās laudat. 7. Agricolae puellās parvās laudāmus. 8. Portātisne aquam?

34. 1. I call, they call, we call. 2. You do not fight, he carries, do they praise? 3. We praise the queen. 4. The queen praises the girls. 5. The farmer is plowing the land. 6. The small girls are carrying large roses. 7. Does the farmer carry a long spear?
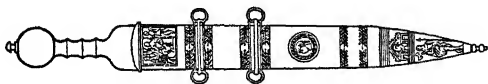
GLADIUS

CHAPTER VI

FIRST DECLENSION (*continued*)

CONJUGATION OF MONEŌ: Present Indicative Active

Genitive and Indirect Object

35.

PERSON	SINGULAR
1st.	moneō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*
2d.	monēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise*
3d.	monet, *he advises, is advising, does advise*
	PLURAL
1st.	monēmus, *we advise, are advising, do advise*
2d.	monētis, *you advise, are advising, do advise*
3d.	monent, *they advise, are advising, do advise*

a. The present stem of **moneō**, a verb of the second or ē-conjugation, is **monē-** ; base **mon-**.

b. The endings of **moneō** are the same as those of **laudō**, and the two verbs are conjugated alike, except that in laudō the -ā- disappears before -ō in the first person, while the -ē- in **moneō** is retained and shortened (13, *a*).

c. The vowels **a** and **e**, characteristic respectively of the first and second conjugations, are long (**ā** and **ē**) except before a vowel (13, *a*) or nd and nt (13, *b*), and before *final* **m, r,** and **t.**

36.   VOCABULARY

fābula, f., *story.*

nauta, m., *sailor.*

silva, f., *forest, woods.*

via, f., *road, street, way*

in, prep., *in* or *on*, with the abl.; or *into*, with the acc

cūr, adv., *why ?*

nārrō, -āre, *tell, narrate.*

dō, dare, *give.*

videō, -ēre, *see.*

habeō, -ēre, *have.*

doceō, -ēre, *teach.*

quis, interrog. pronoun, *who ?*

a. The letters -**āre** and -**ēre**, after the verbs in the vocabulary, are the terminations for the infinitive, as · **nārrō**, *I tell*; **nārrāre**, *to tell*; **moneō**, *I advise*, **monēre**, *to advise.* These terminations show whether the verbs belong to the first conjugation like **laudō**, or to the second conjugation like **moneō**. The **a** in the stem of **dare** is, contrary to rule, short.

37.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Rosās puellārum videō,** $\begin{cases} \textit{I see the girls' roses,} \\ \text{or, } \textit{I see the roses of the girls.} \end{cases}$

2. **Viās silvae videō,** *I see the roads of the forest.*

The first sentence does not mean that I see all roses, but simply those which belong to the girls. The word **puellārum** thus limits **rosās**. In the same way **silvae** limits **viās** in 2.

38. RULE. *A noun or pronoun used to limit another, not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive case.*

a. When the genitive denotes possession, as in the first sentence, it is often called *the possessive genitive* or *the genitive of possession*, otherwise merely the *limiting genitive.*

39.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Puellae rosās dō, $\begin{cases} \textit{I give roses to the girl,} \\ \text{or, } \textit{I give the girl roses.} \end{cases}$

a. In this sentence the dative **puellae** represents the person to whom I give the roses, and is called the *indirect object.* The word *to* is not always written in English before the indirect object.

40. RULE. *The indirect object is in the dative.*

41.   Order of Words

a. The order of words in Latin is quite varied, and must be learned largely by observation. The regular, or normal, order is :

subject	modifiers of subject	indirect object	direct object	modifiers of verb	verb.

b. A genitive or an adjective, if emphatic, generally comes before the noun it limits, otherwise after it. The most common adjectives, like **bonus, parvus, multus**, etc., very often precede the noun, because by nature they are emphatic.

EXERCISES

42. 1. Vidēs, nōn vident, vidēmusne? 2. Docet, docēre, docētis, quis docet? 3. In viā, in viam, in silvās; viam in silvīs nōn videō. .4. Quis nautam in viā videt? 5 Parvās rosās agricolae vidēmus. 6. Agricola puellīs fābulās nārrat. 7. Quis rēgīnae rosās dat? 8. Nauta tubam et hastam longam habet. 9. Puellae rēgīnae fābulam nārrant et rēgīna puellās laudat. 10 Cūr nautae fābulās longās nārrātis?

43. 1. He sees, we see, to see, do you see? 2. They have, he has, who has? 3. I am teaching, we are teaching, you do not teach. 4. The sailor tells a long story to the queen. 5. The queen praises the story of the sailor. 6. The farmer gives roses to the little girls. 7. Who sees the small girls in the street?
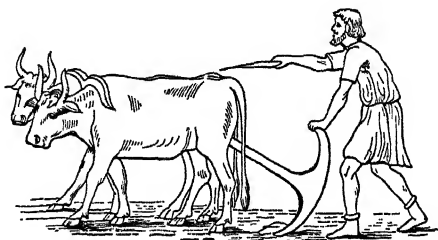
AGRICOLA ARAT

CHAPTER VII

SECOND DECLENSION: Stem in -O-

The Vocative Case and the Ablative of Means

44.   *Paradigm*

	SINGULAR					
	servus, m.	fīlius, m.	bellum, n.	cōnsilium, n.		
	slave	*son*	*war*	*plan*		
Stem:	servo-	fīlio-	bello-	cōnsilio-	TERMINATIONS	
Base.	serv-	fīli-	bell-	cōnsili-	MAS	NEU.
Nom.	servus	fīlius	bellum	cōnsilium	-us	-um
Gen.	servī	fīlī	bellī	cōnsilī	-ī	-ī
Dat.	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
Acc.	servum	fīlium	bellum	cōnsilium	-um	-um
Abl.	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
	PLURAL					
Nom.	servī	fīliī	bella	cōnsilia	-ī	-a
Gen.	servōrum	fīliōrum	bellōrum	cōnsiliōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs
Acc.	servōs	fīliōs	bella	cōnsilia	-ōs	-a
Abl.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of nouns in -us of the second declension ends in -e, as serve, *O slave.* Since in other nouns of this declension, and in all nouns of other declensions, both singular and plural, the vocative has the same form as the nominative, the vocative is not given in the paradigms.

b. Nouns ending in -ius and -ium contract the -iī of the genitive to -ī, as fīlī for fīliī, but the contracted form retains the accent of the uncontracted form, even if the penult be short, as cōnsílī for cōnsíliī.

c. Nouns in -ius contract the -ie in the vocative to -ī and retain the accent of the nominative, as : **Horātius**, voc. **Horátī** (not **Horātie**), (*O) Horatius* ; **fílī** (not **fílie**), (*O*) *son.*

d. In the neuter of all declensions the nominative and accusative cases have the same form, and in the plural end in -**a.**

45. There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the final letter (characteristic) of the stem, and by the termination of the genitive singular, thus :

Declension	Stem-Vowel (or Characteristic)	Termination of the Genitive
I	ā	-ae
II	o	-ī
III	i, or a consonant	-is
IV	u	-ūs
V	ē	-ĕī

Note — The termination of the genitive will hereafter be given after each noun in the vocabularies to show to which declension it belongs.

46.　　Illustrative Examples

1. **Hastīs, domine,**[1] **servōs armant,** *master, they are arming the slaves with spears.*

2. **Servī vigilantiā oppidum servant,** *the slaves by vigilance save the town.*

RULES OF SYNTAX

47. *The vocative is used in addressing a person.*

48. *The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition.*

---

[1] The vocative seldom comes first in the sentence.

49.   VOCABULARY

gladius, -ī, m , *sword.*

dominus, -ī, m., *master.*

mūrus, -ī, m , *wall.*

hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*

servus, -ī, m., *slave.*

templum, -ī, n., *temple.*

vigilantia, -ae, f , *vigilance, watchfulness.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*

armō, -āre, *arm.*

servō, -āre, *save.*

dēleō, -ēre, *destroy.*

EXERCISES

50. 1. Servōrum, servīs, servī, (Ō)[1] serve ! 2. Dominī hortus mūrum habet. 3. Quis in hortum aquam portat ? 4. In hortō fīliōs et fīliās vidēmus. 5. Quis dōna fīliīs[2] et fīliābus[3] portat ? 6. Vidēsne templa deōrum et deārum in oppidō ? 7. Mūrōs oppidī hastā et gladiō dēlent. 8. Quis, fīlī, servō gladium et tubam dat ? 9. Dominus gladiō et tubā servum armat. 10 Habēs, serve, dōnum gladī et tubae ; tubā dominī fīliōs vocās, gladiō pugnās.

51. 1. Of the master, for the master, (O) master,[1] (O) son.[1] 2. By war, of wars, for war, for the son, of the son 3. The plans of the master, by the master's plans. 4. The slave teaches the master's sons. 5. We see the temples of the gods and goddesses. 6. The slaves are bringing gifts for the gods[2] and goddesses.[3] 7. The master praises the vigilance of the slave. 8. (O) slave, who is calling the master's sons with the trumpet ?

---

[1] With the vocative, this word *O* may be used or omitted in both Latin and English, according to the sense.

[2] The indirect object (40) is sometimes translated by *for* (21, *c*).

[3] **Fīlia,** *daughter*, and **dea,** *goddess*, nouns of the first declension, though otherwise regular, have **fīliābus** and **deābus** in the dative and ablative plural to distinguish them from the corresponding forms of **fīlius** and **deus.**

CHAPTER VIII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Questions. Agreement of Adjectives

52   *Paradigm*

SINGULAR		
Nom. bonus dominus	bona puella	bonum dōnum
Gen. bonī dominī	bonae puellae	bonī dōnī
Dat bonō dominō	bonae puellae	bonō dōnō
Acc. bonum dominum	bonam puellam	bonum dōnum
Abl. bonō dominō	bonā puellā	bonō dōnō
PLURAL		
Nom. bonī dominī	bonae puellae	bona dōna
Gen. bonōrum dominōrum	bonārum puellārum	bonōrum dōnōrum
Dat. bonīs dominīs	bonīs puellīs	bonīs dōnīs
Acc. bonōs dominōs	bonās puellās	bona dōna
Abl. bonīs dominīs	bonīs puellīs	bonīs dōnīs

a. From the paradigm (see also 23) it is seen that adjectives are declined like nouns, and that the endings change according to the gender of the nouns to which they belong.

53. Decline **bonus,** *good,* in the three genders, thus:

	MAS	FEM	NEU
SINGULAR			
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
PLURAL			
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

54. Rule. *An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs.*

55. Though an adjective must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case, it may differ in form For example, if a noun of the first declension is masculine, the form of the adjective must be masculine, thus:

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	bonus agricola	bonī agricolae
Gen.	bonī agricolae	bonōrum agricolārum
Dat.	bonō agricolae	bonīs agricolīs
Acc.	bonum agricolam	bonōs agricolās
Abl.	bonō agricolā	bonīs agricolīs

56.   Illustrative Examples

1. Quis fīlium agricolae videt? *Who sees the farmer's son?*

2. Cūr dominus servōs armat? *Why does the master · arm the slaves?*

3. Vidēsne fīlium agricolae?
4. Agricolaene fīlium vidēs? *Do you see the farmer's son?*
5. Fīliumne agricolae vidēs?

6. Nōnne fīlium agricolae vidēs? *Do you not see the farmer's son?*

a. An interrogative sentence, in Latin as in English, may be introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb, as in 1 and 2.

b. If the interrogative sentence has no interrogative pronoun or adverb, the enclitic -ne (see 16) is generally attached to the word about which the question is asked. This word usually comes at the beginning of the sentence. As the verb usually contains the leading idea, that very frequently comes first, as in 3. In 4 the question is whether you see the son of the *farmer* rather than the son of some other man. (Cf. 41, *b.*) In 5 the

question is whether you see the *son* of the farmer instead of his daughter, or some other relative. In 6 the question is whether you do *not* see the farmer's son, which implies that the questioner supposes that you do see him.

c. In answering, the verb is generally repeated, as ·

Vidēsne viam, *do you see the road ?*   **Videō,** *yes*, *I see it.*

57.   VOCABULARY

carrus, -ī, m., *wagon.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

numerus, -ī, m , *number.*

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain.*

auxilium, -ī, n., *help, aid.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *supply, abundance* ;   plur., *forces, troops.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

magnus, -a, -um, *large, great*

parvus, -a, -um, *little, small.*

novus, -a, -um, *new.*

multus, -a, -um, *much* ; plur , *many.*

rogō, -āre, *ask.*

58.   EXERCISES

1. Bonus agricola magnum numerum equōrum et carrōrum habet.   2. In oppidō multōs carrōs nōn habēmus. 3. Bonī agricolae multum frūmentum in oppidum portant. 4. Quis auxilium rogat ? Dominus auxilium rogat.   5. Rogāsne, parve fīlī, auxilium ? Nōn rogō.   6. Nōnne servī auxilium rogant ?   7. Parvāsne puellās vidētis ?   8. Magnās puellās vidēmus.   9. Fīliāsne bonī agricolae vidēs ? 10. Fīliōs, nōn fīliās, videō.

59. 1. We have a great supply of grain.   2. Many farm-.ers have large wagons   3. In the good farmer's new wagon. 4. Who is fighting with the long spear and large sword ? 5. Who teaches the queen's sons and daughters ?   6. Do you not praise the master's slave ?   7. Do the slaves teach the master's sons ? (Read *56, b* ; then write 7 in several ways)

CHAPTER IX

SECOND DECLENSION (*continued*)

Nouns in -**er** and -**ir** and Adjectives in -**er**

60. *Paradigm*

	puer, m., *boy*	ager, m., *field*	vir, m., *man*	
Stem:	puero-	agro-	viro-	
Base :	puer-	agr-	vir-	
	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	——
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
Abl	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
	PLURAL			
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
Dat	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
Acc	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
Abl	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

61. *a.* The masculine form of the adjective miser, -era, -erum, *poor, pitiable,* is declined like puer, thus:

	MAS	FEM.	NEU
Nom.	miser	misera	miserum
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō
	etc.	etc.	etc.

b. The masculine form of the adjective **aeger, -gra, -grum,** *sick,* is declined like **ager,** thus :

	Mas.	Fem.	Neu
Nom.	aeger	aegra	aegrum
Gen	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
	etc.	etc	etc.

Complete the declension of **miser** and **aeger**

62. *a.* Nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are declined like **servus** (44), except that the nominative has no **-us.**

b. **Ager** is like **puer,** except that the **e** occurs only in the nominative. Most nouns in **-er** are declined like **ager.** The genitive shows which paradigm is to be followed.

c. Some adjectives in **-er** are declined like **miser** and some like **aeger.** The vocabulary will show by the forms given for the feminine and neuter whether **e** is retained in inflection as in **puer** or dropped as in **ager**

d. Decline together **pulcher equus, asper nauta, pulchrum dōnum, novus liber, līber gener.**

63. RULE OF GENDER *Nouns of the second declension ending in* **-us, -er,** *and* **-ir** *are masculine ; those in* **-um** *are neuter.*

64. VOCABULARY

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*

liber, -brī, m , *book.*

magister, -trī, m., *master* [1]

caper, -prī, m., *goat.*

niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*

asper, -era, -erum, *rough.*

tener, -era, -erum, *tender.*

līber, -era, -erum, *free.*

līberī, -ōrum, plu., m., *children* [2]

līberō, -āre, *liberate, free.*

labōrō, -āre, *work, toil.*

[1] **Magister** means *master, director, teacher.* **Dominus** means *master, proprietor, owner,* especially of slaves

[2] In Rome the *family,* **familia,** often included the entire household, sometimes containing many slaves. So the children were called **līberī,** the free ones, in distinction from the slaves.

65. 1. In agrīs asperīs, novī librī, līberī virī, dōna pulchra. 2. Tenerae puellae, nigrī equī, miserō equō, nautae asperō 3. Parvus puer nigrum caprum habet. 4. Magister bonō puerō novum librum dat. 5 Vidēsne, parve puer, pulchra dōna magistrī? 6. Vir līberīs fābulam longam nārrat. 7. Miserī servī in dominī agrīs labōrant. 8. Cūr, domine, miserum servum nōn līberās? 9 Nōnne fīlium virī et generum in hortō vidēs? 10. Magister fīliōs et fīliās generī docet.

66. 1. Of the new book, for the black horse. 2. Of the free man, for the sick man's daughters. 3. The master's slave is toiling in the field. 4. He gives his sons and daughters beautiful gifts. 5. The children have a large horse and a small goat. 6. Do you see the boy's beautiful books? 7. The poor slave does not have a new book.

CHAPTER X

REVIEW

67. Review the rules for pronunciation, quantity, and accent, 4-17; the paradigms, 22, 23, 28, 35, 44, 52, 53, 60; the vocabularies, 25, 32, 36, 49, 57, 64; and rules of syntax thus far given.

Decline **poēta, fābula, numerus, auxilium, frūmentum, gener, liber**; the adjectives **longus, tener, pulcher**, in the three genders; and decline together **aeger nauta, novus gladius, līber vir, asper caper**. Give the genitive and vocative singular and plural of **dominus, fīlius**, and **magister**.

Conjugate **portō, videō, servō**, and **doceō** in the present indicative. Write out the list of terminations of the first declension; of the second declension, masculine and neuter; also the list of personal endings of the verb.

EXERCISES

68. 1. Auxiliō novae lūnae et stellārum viam asperam in silvā vidēmus. 2. Vidēsne, serve, puerī nigrōs caprōs ? Nōn videō, domine 3. Magisterne fīliōs et fīliās līberī virī docet? 4. Nauta asper pulchrae[1] virī puellae fābulam nārrat. 5. Fīliī rēgīnae dōna multa et pulchra in templum portant 6. In pulchrīs deōrum templīs multa dōna vidētis. 7. Miserī agricolae servī asperīs in[2] agrīs labōrant 8. Nōnne dominus vigilantiam servōrum miserōrum laudat ? 9. Quis, parve puer, agricolae līberōs tubā vocat ? 10. Nautae asperī in terrā gladiīs et hastīs pugnant.

69. 1. Horatius, do you see in the town the temple of the gods ? 2. Yes,[3] master ; and I am bringing gifts into the temple for the gods and goddesses 3. Who teaches the sons and daughters of the queen ? 4. The son-in-law of Horatius gives the farmer's son a black horse. 5. With the black horse the boy plows the rough fields.

[1] When an adjective and a genitive both limit the same noun, the order often is | adjective¹ | genitive² | noun³ |

[2] The preposition often, as here, comes between the adjective and the noun.

[3] 56, *c.*

DENARIUS ROMANUS
A Roman coin with the head of Julius Cæsar

CHAPTER XI

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Imperfect and Future Active

70	**I. laudō, -āre**	

Imperfect

SINGULAR

PERSONAL ENDINGS

laudābam, *I was praising, I praised, I did praise*	-ō, or -m, *I*
laudābās, *you were praising, you praised, you did praise*	-s, *you (thou)*
laudābat, *he was praising, he praised, he did praise*	-t, *he*

PLURAL

laudābāmus, *we were praising, we praised, we did praise*	-mus, *we*
laudābātis, *you were praising, you praised, you did praise*	-tis, *you*
laudābant, *they were praising, they praised, they did praise*	-nt, *they*

Future

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudābō, *I shall praise*	laudābimus, *we shall praise*
laudābis, *you will praise*	laudābitis, *you will praise*
laudābit, *he will praise*	laudābunt, *they will praise*

II. moneō, -ēre			
Imperfect		*Future*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbō	monēbimus
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbis	monēbitis
monēbat	monēbant	monēbit	monēbunt

a. The personal endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the present (28) and future, except that in the first person singular the imperfect has -m, the present and future -ō. Learn the table of personal endings given above.

b. The imperfect may be formed from the present stem (28, *a*) by inserting -bā- (cf. 35, *c*) before the personal endings (28). This -bā- is called the tense-sign of the imperfect. The vowel before -bā- is long.

c. The tense-sign of the future is -bi-, modified in the first singular to -b- and in the third plural to -bu-.

d. Conjugate all verbs whose infinitive ends in -āre, like laudō; those whose infinitive ends in -ēre, like moneō. Observe the meaning of the tenses as given for *laudō*.

71.   VOCABULARY

populus, -ī, m , *people.*	audeō, -ēre, *dare.*
rēgnum, -ī, n., *power, sover-*	dēbeō, -ēre, *ought.*
eign power, royalty.	obtineō, -ēre, *hold, obtain.*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*	moveō, -ēre, *move.*
castra, -ōrum, n , plu., *camp.*	nūntiō, -āre, *announce, re-*
occupō, -āre, *seize, occupy.*	*port.*

EXERCISES

72. 1. Laudās, laudābās, laudābunt. 2. Movet, movēbat, movēbit 3 Movēbāmus, pugnābimus, pugnāmus, pugnāre dēbēmus. 4. Portō, portābis, portābant. 5. Rogātis, rogābimus, rogāre dēbent. 6. Nōnne servī oppidum occupābant? 7. Cūr castra movēre nōn audētis? 8. Victōriam cōpiīs nūntiābimus. 9. Miserī servī aquam in hortum dominō portābant. 10. Quis rēgnum obtinet? Populus rēgnum obtinēre dēbet.

73. 1. He praises, he praised, he will praise. 2. They were praising, you are praising, we shall praise. 3. We shall move, he is moving, I ought to move. 4. Does he call? Who was plowing? 5. Does not the farmer praise the boy? 6. A good friend is bringing water for the sick boy. 7. We ought by vigilance to save the town.

CHAPTER XII

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive

Ablative of Agent

74.	laudō, -āre	

Present

SINGULAR | PERSONAL ENDINGS

laudor, *I am praised, am being praised* — -r

laudāris (-re), *you are praised, are being praised* — -ris [1]

laudātur, *he is praised, is being praised* — -tur

PLURAL

laudāmur, *we are praised, are being praised* — -mur

laudāminī, *you are praised, are being praised* — -minī

laudantur, *they are praised, are being praised* — -ntur

Imperfect

SINGULAR

laudābar, *I was praised, I was being praised*

laudābāris (-re), *you were praised, you were being praised*

laudābātur, *he was praised, was being praised*

PLURAL

laudābāmur, *we were praised, were being praised*

laudābāminī, *you were praised, were being praised*

laudābantur, *they were praised, were being praised*

Future

SINGULAR | PLURAL

laudābor, *I shall be praised.* | laudābimur, *we shall be praised*

laudāberis (-re), *you will be* | laudābiminī, *you will be praised*
praised | laudābuntur, *they will be praised*

laudābitur, *he will be praised*

---

[1] In the second singular passive the ending -re is sometimes used instead of -ris, as: **laudāre** for **laudāris**.

75.	moneō, ēre		
Present	*Imperfect*		*Future*
	SINGULAR		
1. moneor	monēbar		monēbor
2. monēris (-re)	monēbāris (-re)		monēberis (-re)
3. monētur	monēbātur		monēbitur
	PLURAL		
1. monēmur	monēbāmur		monēbimur
2. monēminī	monēbāminī		monēbiminī
3. monentur	monēbantur		monēbuntur

a. For the translation of 75 compare 74.

b. Review 70, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*. The passive may be made from the active by merely substituting the passive endings (74) for the active (70). Learn very carefully the two sets of endings.

c. The present infinitive passive of the first and second conjugations may be formed from the infinitive active by changing the final e to ī, as : laudāre, *to praise*, laudārī, *to be praised* ; monēre, *to advise*, monērī, *to be advised*.

d. Observe from the translations of 74 that the English passive is formed by using the *perfect passive participle* with some form of the auxiliary verb *be.* Carefully distinguish between such English forms as the progressive active, *I was praising*, and the passive, *I was praised*, or *I was being praised*.

76.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. *Active*

Magister puerum laudat, *the master praises the boy.*

2. *Passive*

Puer ā magistrō laudātur, *the boy is praised by the master.*

a. That which is the object of the verb in the active becomes the subject in the passive. Of course if the verb has no object

in the active, there will be no passive, as : **puer ambulat,** *the boy walks.* [No passive.]

b. The subject of the active, if a person, becomes the agent in the passive. The agent is the person by whom something is done, and is denoted by the ablative with **ā** or **ab.**

c. Before a consonant **ā** (rarely **ab**) is used, as **ā magistrō ;** before a vowel or **h, ab** is used, as **ab agricolā ;** just as in English we say *a pear,* but *an apple.*

77. RULE. *The personal agent with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab.**

NOTE — Observe that the agent is a person and always takes the preposition ; the means is that *by* or *with which* something is done, and never takes the preposition (46, 48), thus : *the boy was wounded* by *a friend* (agent) **with** *a sword* (means), **puer gladiō ab amīcō volnerābātur**

78.   **VOCABULARY**

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend.*	**volnerō, -āre,** *wound.*
tyrannus, -ī, m., *tyrant.*	**vāstō, -āre,** *devastate, lay waste.*
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*	**terreō, -ēre,** *frighten.*
ōlim, adv , *once, formerly.*	**habitō, -āre,** *live, dwell.*
ubi, adv., *where.*	**amō, -āre,** *love.*

EXERCISES

79. 1. Laudāris, laudābāris, laudāberis. 2. Monēmur, monēbāminī, monēbuntur. 3 Laudābit, laudābiminī, docēbitur. 4. Vocāmur, vidēbitur, vidēbant, monēris. 5. Multa oppida bellō dēlēbantur. 6. In Galliā ōlim rēgnum ā tyrannō occupābātur. 7. In Americā ā līberō populō rēgnum obtinētur. 8. Dominus gladiō ab asperō servō volnerābātur. 9. Bonī servī ā dominō laudābuntur. 10. Bonus dominus ab amīcō servī miserī laudābitur.

80. 1. You will be praised, I was being praised, they are advised. 2. Will you be frightened ? are we not taught ?

why was he praised? 3. We ought to praise the farmer's son. 4 A friend will be loved by a friend. 5. The poor slaves were not freed by the master. 6 In Gaul many fields were devastated by war. 7. Where do you live? I live in America

CHAPTER XIII

CONJUGATION OF SUM: Present, Imperfect, and Future

Predicate: Noun and Adjective

81. *Paradigm*

Present	Imperfect	Future
	SINGULAR	
sum, *I am*	eram, *I was*	erō, *I shall be*
es, *you are*	erās, *you were*	eris, *you will be*
est, *he is*	erat, *he was*	erit, *he will be*
	PLURAL	
sumus, *we are*	erāmus, *we were*	erimus, *we shall be*
estis, *you are*	erātis, *you were*	eritis, *you will be*
sunt, *they are*	erant, *they were*	erunt, *they will be*

NOTE — The stem of sum is es-, but in some forms the e is dropped, and in some forms s is changed to r

82. A noun used to explain or identify another noun, or a pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is an *appositive,* as: **Mercurius nūntius deōrum,** *Mercury, the messenger of the gods.*

83. RULE. *An appositive is in the same case as the word it limits.*

84. A noun in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb, and denoting the same person or thing as the subject, is a *predicate* noun, as: **Mercurius erat nūntius**

deōrum, *Mercury was messenger of the gods* ; or **Mercurius vocābātur nūntius deōrum**, *Mercury was called the messenger of the gods*.

85. RULE. *A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.*

86. *a.* An adjective that limits its noun directly is an *attributive* adjective, as : **novus liber**, *a new book*.

b. An adjective that is connected with its noun by a verb is a *predicate* adjective, as : **liber est novus**, *the book is new*.

87. RULE. *A predicate adjective agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.*

88.   VOCABULARY

sum, *I am;* esse, *to be.*

vīcus, -ī, m , *village.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, deputy, envoy, ambassador, legate.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger.*

verbum, -ī, n., *word.*

incendium, -ī, n , *fire.*

contentus, -a, -um, *contented*

Mārcus, -ī, m , *Marcus*

Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury.*

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta.*

Sabīnus, -ī, m.. *Sabinus.*

EXERCISES

89. 1. Es, erās, eris, esse. 2. Erāmus, sumus, eritis. 3. Est, erat, eritne? 4. Eram, estis, erimus. 5. Eritis, sunt, erātisne? 6. Quis est aeger? Miserī servī sunt aegrī. 7. Quis nōn audet esse bonus? 8. Bonī esse dēbēmus. 9. Librī nōn sunt novī. 10. In parvō vīcō nōn erant multī librī 11. Nōnne rēgīna vocābātur pulchra? 12. Nūntiī Vestae, deae pulchrae, multa dōna portant. 13. Pulchrī librī sunt dōnum Mārcī, bonī amīcī.

90. 1. You are, they will be, we were, to be. 2. I was, you will be, are they? 3. We are, you were, who will be?

4. You are free and ought to be contented.   5. I gave the new books to Marcus, a good friend.   6 Who was the friend of Marcus?   7. Many towns were destroyed with fire and sword by Sabinus, the lieutenant.

CHAPTER XIV

CONJUGATION OF SUM: Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect

Dative of Possessor

91.   *Paradigm*

	Perfect	
	Singular	Personal Endings
fuī, *I have been* or *I was*		-ī
fuistī, *you have been* or *you were*		-istī
fuit, *he has been* or *he was*		-it
	Plural	
fuimus, *we have been* or *we were*		-imus
fuistis, *you have been* or *you were*		-istis
fuērunt (-ēre), *they have been* or *they were*		-ērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect	*Future Perfect*
Singular	Singular
fueram, *I had been*	fuerō, *I shall have been*
fuerās, *you had been*	fueris, *you will have been*
fuerat, *he had been*	fuerit, *he will have been*
Plural	Plural
fuerāmus, *we had been*	fuerimus, *we shall have been*
fuerātis, *you had been*	fueritis, *you will have been*
fuerant, *they had been*	fuerint, *they will have been*

Perfect Infinitive — **fuisse**, *to have been*

a. The personal endings of the perfect tense are different from those of all the other tenses, and should be carefully learned. In the third plural the ending -**ēre** is sometimes used instead of -**ērunt**.

b. The stem of the perfect is also different from the stem of the present, and may always be found by dropping the personal ending -**ī** from the first person of the perfect.

c. The pluperfect and future perfect are formed by adding the imperfect **eram, erās,** etc. and the future **erō, eris,** etc., to the perfect stem. But in the third plural of the future perfect -**erint** occurs instead of -**erunt**

92. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Puerō est liber,** *the boy has (to the boy there is) a book.*

2. **Puer librum habet,** *the boy has a book.*

a. Possession may be expressed in either of these two ways, but for practice it is well, in the exercises, to write both ways till they become familiar.

93. RULE. *The dative may be used with the verb* **sum** *to denote the possessor.*

NOTE — The thing possessed is the subject.

94. VOCABULARY

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*

Rōmānī, -ōrum, plu., *the Romans.*

validus, -a, -um, *strong.*

iūstus, -a, -um, *just, regular.*

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant.*

fugitīvus, -ī, m., *fugitive, deserter.*

necō, -āre, *kill, put to death.*

teneō, -ēre, *hold.*

videō, -ēre, *see* ; in passive *be seen* or *seem, appear.*

mox, adv , *soon.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

EXERCISES

95. 1 Fuistī, fuerās, fueris   2. Fuimus, fueritis, fuerint
3. Esse, fuisse, quis fuit? 4. Fuerās, fueritis, fuērunt. 5
Fueritis, fuerātis, fuistis. 6 Puerō est novus liber, dōnum
amīcī. 7. Puellae sunt dōna pulchra   8. Lēgātus fuerat
amīcus populī Rōmānī. 9 Rōmānī multōs vīcōs et oppida
Galliae dēlēbant. 10 Lātī agrī ā Rōmānīs nunc vāstantur.
11. Incolae erant multī et validī. 12. Validī fuisse videntur.
13. Fugitīvus ā lēgātō tenētur et mox necābitur.

96. 1. I have been, you will have been, they have been.
2. We have been, they had been, I shall have been. 3. Have
they been just? had you not been strong? 4. He seems
to be strong, they seem to have been strong. 5. We ought
to be just. 6. Will the lieutenant dare to fight? 7. The
deserters will be put to death with the sword by the Ro-
mans. 8. The Romans had strong swords.

· CHAPTER XV

LAUDŌ AND MONEŌ: Indicative (*completed*)

Perfect Infinitive

97.   *Principal Parts*

PRES IND.	PRES INF.	PERF. IND.	PERFECT PASSIVE PART
laudō, *I praise*	laudāre, *to praise*	laudāvī, *I have praised*	laudātus, *having been praised,* or *praised*
moneō, *I advise*	monēre, *to advise*	monuī, *I have advised*	monitus, *having been advised,* or *advised*

NOTE. — These four forms of the verb are called the *principal parts*, since all other parts of the verb are formed from them.

98.   laudō: perfect stem **laudāv-**

ACTIVE VOICE	*Perfect*	PASSIVE VOICE
I have praised, I praised, etc		*I have been praised, I was praised,*
	SINGULAR	etc.
1. laudāvī		laudātus **sum**
2. laudāvistī		laudātus **es**
3. laudāvit		laudātus **est**
	PLURAL	
1. laudāvimus		laudātī **sumus**
2. laudāvistis		laudātī **estis**
3. laudāvērunt (-ēre)		laudātī **sunt**

Pluperfect

I had praised, etc.   *I had been praised*, etc.

	SINGULAR	
1. laudāveram		laudātus **eram**
2. laudāverās		laudātus **erās**
3. laudāverat		laudātus **erat**
	PLURAL	
1. laudāverāmus		laudātī **erāmus**
2. laudāverātis		laudātī **erātis**
3. laudāverant		laudātī **erant**

Future Perfect

I shall have praised, etc.   *I shall have been praised*, etc.

	SINGULAR	
1. laudāverō		laudātus **erō**
2. laudāveris		laudātus **eris**
3. laudāverit		laudātus **erit**
	PLURAL	
1. laudāverimus		laudātī **erimus**
2. laudāveritis		laudātī **eritis**
3. laudāverint		laudātī **erunt**

99. moneō perfect stem monu-

ACTIVE VOICE	*Perfect*	PASSIVE VOICE
I have advised, etc		*I have been advised*, etc.

SINGULAR

1. monuī	monitus sum
2. monuistī	monitus es
3. monuit	monitus est

PLURAL

1. monuimus	monitī sumus
2 monuistis	monitī estis
3. monuērunt (-ēre)	monitī sunt

Pluperfect

I had advised, etc.	*I had been advised*, etc.

SINGULAR

1 monueram	monitus eram
2. monuerās	monitus erās
3. monuerat	monitus erat

PLURAL

1. monuerāmus	monitī erāmus
2. monuerātis	monitī erātis
3. monuerant	monitī erant

Future Perfect

I shall have advised, etc.	*I shall have been advised*, etc.

SINGULAR

1. monuerō	monitus erō
2. monueris	monitus eris
3. monuerit	monitus erit

PLURAL

1 monuerimus	monitī erimus
2. monueritis	monitī eritis
3. monuerint	monitī erunt

Active Voice	*Perfect Infinitive*	Passive Voice
laudāvisse, *to have praised*	laudātus esse, *to have been praised*
monuisse, *to have advised*	monitus esse, *to have been advised*

a. The perfect participle is inflected like bonus, -a. -um, and always agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs in gender, number, and case, like an adjective, as · laudāta est, *she has been praised*; puellae laudātae sunt, *the girls have been praised*; servus volnerātus, *the wounded slave.*

b. The *perfect system* includes the three tenses which are formed from the perfect stem : the *perfect, pluperfect.* and *future perfect*, active. The *present system*, for the same reason, includes the three tenses formed from the present stem. the *present, imperfect*, and *future*, active and passive.

c. The letters -era- and -eri- may be considered the tense-signs of the pluperfect and future perfect active (See 91, *c.*) In the passive the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with sum, eram, etc.

d. All Latin verbs are inflected alike in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

100. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs, and inflect them in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

> culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame.*
> dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give.*
> habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus, *have, hold.*
> dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought.*
> doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, *teach.*
> teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold.*
> terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, *frighten, scare.*
> obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, obtentus, *obtain, hold.*
> dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, *destroy.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see,* in passive, *seem, appear.*

a. All regular verbs of the first conjugation have long a (ā) before -re of the present infinitive. The irregular verb dō, *give,* has short a, and an irregular stem in the perfect All the verbs of the first conjugation, which have been thus far used, form their principal parts regularly, like laudō, and so are not repeated here.

b. Verbs of the second conjugation have long e (ē) before the -re of the present infinitive.

c. The perfect stems and the participles of different verbs vary considerably, and must be learned for each verb from the principal parts as given in the vocabulary.

d. The stem of the perfect of all verbs is found by dropping the personal ending -ī from the perfect as given in the principal parts.

EXERCISES

101. 1 Culpāvī, dedī, docueram, mōverō 2. Culpātus erō, laudātī erant, vīsī estis. 3. Doctī erāmus, dedistī, cūr territī sunt ? 4 Dedit, vīderāmus, puella docta est. 5. Multa oppida incendiō dēlēta esse videntur 6. Rōmānī castra mōvisse vidēbantur. 7. Rēgnum ōlim ā tyrannō obtentum erat. 8. Lēgātus, sagittā volnerātus,[1] aeger erat 9. Multī agrī Galliae, ā Rōmānīs occupātī,[1] incendiō vāstātī sunt. 10. Incolae dēlētī[1] oppidī territī esse vidēbantur. 11. Dēbentne oppida bellō dēlērī ?

102. 1. I have praised, you had warned, he will have been frightened. 2. We have been praised, you had been taught, they will have been seen. 3. A great number of beautiful books has been given to the sick boy. 4. Victory

[1] 99, *a.*

had been announced to the Roman people by a messenger
5 A large town, seized[1] by the lieutenant, seems to have
been destroyed by fire. 6. Ought the frightened[1] inhab-
itants to be blamed?

CHAPTER XVI

THIRD CONJUGATION: REGŌ

103.   *Paradigm*

---

regō, *rule*
Principal parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	

Present

I rule, etc.   *I am ruled*, etc.

1. regō	regimus	regor	regimur
2 regis	regitis	regeris (-re)	regiminī
3. regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur

Imperfect

I was ruling, etc.   *I was ruled*, etc.

1. regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
2. regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris (-re)	regēbāminī
3. regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur

Future

I shall rule, etc.   *I shall be ruled*, etc.

1. regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
2. regēs	regētis	regēris (-re)	regēminī
3. reget	regent	regētur	regentur

---

a. The personal endings (70) of all conjugations are the same,
but the vowel before the endings varies. Accordingly verbs

---

[1] 99, *a.*

are divided into four regular conjugations, distinguished by the stem-vowel which appears before -re of the present infinitive active (cf. 100, *a*, *b*), thus:

Conjugation	Present Infinitive Active	Characteristic Vowel	Stem
I	laudāre, *to praise*	ā	laudā-
II	monēre, *to advise*	ē	monē-
III	regere, *to rule*	ĕ	rege-
IV	audīre, *to hear*	ī	audī-

b. The stem-vowel, short e, which is characteristic of the third conjugation, changes in some forms of the present to i or u.

c. The tense-sign of the future indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is -ē- (-a- in 1st person) instead of -bi- (70, *c*).

d. The infinitive passive of the third conjugation may be formed from the infinitive active by putting -ī in the place of the ending -ere, as: regere, *to rule*; regī, *to be ruled*. Cf. 75, *c*.

104. **VOCABULARY**

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

socius, -ī, m, *ally, associate.*

statim, adv., *at once, immediately.*

sed, conj., *but.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call.*

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, *defend.*

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *surpass.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer.*

EXERCISES

105. 1. Regit, regēs, mittēbātis, mittere. 2. Regimur, vincēmus, vincēbantur, dēfendēminī. 3. Superābis, mittēs, mittēris, appellāre. 4. Vincēbās, vinceris, dēfendēmur, mittēbāminī. 5. Vincitur, vincent, vincere, vincī, appellāre.

6. Sociī populī Rōmānī ōlim appellābantur amīcī. 7. Sociī tum erant validī sed ā Rōmānīs superābantur. 8. Nunc auxilium rogant et auxilium statim mittētur. 9. Amīcī populī Rōmānī dēfendentur. 10. Multa oppida et magnī agrī tum vāstābantur. 11. Rōmānī vīcōs et oppida pīlīs et gladiīs dēfendere videntur.

106. 1. He will be, he will praise, he will teach, he will send. 2. They will be, they will be praised, they will be taught, they will not be sent. 3. We shall be, we shall be praised, we shall not send help. 4. You will be, you will conquer, you will be defended. 5. To conquer, to be conquered, who will conquer? 6. Will help be sent by the allies? 7. Who was called just?
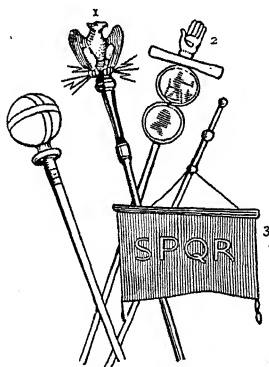
SIGNA ROMANA

1. Aquila   2. Signum   3. Vexillum

CHAPTER XVII

THIRD CONJUGATION. -iō Verbs

107.   *Paradigm*

---

capiō, *take, seize*

Principal parts **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE   PASSIVE VOICE

Present

I take, etc.   *I am taken*, etc.

1. capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
2. capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
3 capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

I was taking, etc.   *I was taken*, etc.

1. capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiēbar	capiēbāmur
2 capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
3. capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

I shall take, etc.   *I shall be taken*, etc.

1. capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
2. capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
3 capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

---

a. Capiō is a regular verb of the third conjugation like **regō** (103); but in the present, first person singular and third person plural, and all through the imperfect and future, the vowel i is added to the verb-stem.

b. In the third conjugation, verbs which end in -iō are conjugated like **capiō**; others like **regō**.

108.   VOCABULARY

grātia, -ae, f., *favor.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*

tēlum, -ī, n , *weapon.*

itaque, conj., *and so, there-fore.*

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attack, besiege.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *re-fuse, reject.*

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *do, make.*

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *finish, complete, wear out.*

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *kill.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus,[1] *flee.*

EXERCISES

109. 1. Capit, regēs, capiēs, regēbātis, fugiēbātis   2. Re-cūsābimus, capiēbāmur, capiuntur.   3. Regēmur, capiēmur, capiēbātis   4. Regeris, regēris, docēberis, cūr recūsābis ?   5. Dēfendere, dēfendī, iacere, iacī, oppugnāre, oppugnārī.   6. Iūstus vir grātiam amīcī nōn recūsābit sed amīcō grā-tiam faciet.   7. Virī pīla iaciunt, tēla iaciuntur   8. Fugitīvī mox ā lēgātō capientur et interficientur.   9. Multa oppida oppugnābantur, itaque incolae proelium nōn recūsābant.   10. Multī virī nunc in proeliō interficiuntur sed bellum mox cōnficiētur.

110. 1. You take, you are taken, we shall take, we shall not be taken.   2. You will rule, we are not being con-quered, they will soon be worn out by war.   3. Who will not do a favor for a friend?   4. The favor of a friend will not be rejected by a friend.   5. They are making war, weapons are thrown, many men are being killed in battle,

---

[1] In the principal parts of intransitive verbs, which can have no passive voice (76, *a*), and therefore no perfect passive participle, the future active participle, made from the same stem but ending in -ūrus, is given.

the inhabitants are fleeing.[1]   6. The town, having been attacked by the Romans, will soon be taken and destroyed by fire.

CHAPTER XVIII

REGŌ AND CAPIŌ: Indicative (*completed*)

111.   *Paradigm*

Perfect			
ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
I have ruled, etc.	*I have been ruled,* etc.	*I have taken,* etc.	*I have been taken,* etc.
1. rēxī	rēctus sum	cēpī	captus sum
2. rēxistī	rēctus es	cēpistī	captus es
3. rēxit	rēctus est	cēpit	captus est
1. rēximus	rēctī sumus	cēpimus	captī sumus
2 rēxistis	rēctī estis	cēpistis	captī estis
3. rēxērunt (-ēre)	rēctī sunt	cēpērunt (-ēre)	captī sunt

Pluperfect			
I had ruled, etc.	*I had been ruled,* etc	*I had taken,* etc.	*I had been taken,* etc.
1 rēxeram	rēctus eram	cēperam	captus eram
2 rēxerās	rēctus erās	cēperās	captus erās
3. rēxerat	rēctus erat	cēperat	captus erat
1. rēxerāmus	rēctī erāmus	cēperāmus	captī erāmus
2. rēxerātis	rēctī erātis	cēperātis	captī erātis
3 rēxerant	rēctī erant	cēperant	captī erant

[1] See 75, *d.*

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4" align="center"><i>Future Perfect</i></td></tr>
</table>

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
I shall have ruled, etc.	*I shall have been ruled*, etc.	*I shall have taken*, etc	*I shall have been taken*, etc
1. rēxerō	rēctus erō	cēperō	captus erō
2. rēxeris	rēctus eris	cēperis	captus eris
3. rēxerit	rēctus erit	cēperit	captus erit
1. rēxerimus	rēctī erimus	cēperimus	captī erimus
2 rēxeritis	rēctī eritis	cēperitis	captī eritis
3. rēxerint	rectī erunt	cēperint	captī erunt

<div align="center"><i>Perfect Infinitive</i></div>

rēxisse, *to have ruled* rēctus esse, *to have been ruled*

cēpisse, *to have taken* captus esse, *to have been taken*

112. **VOCABULARY**

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*

Gallī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Gauls.*

Germānus, -a, -um, *German.*

Germānī, -ōrum, plu , m., *the Germans.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, plu., m., *the Haedui.*

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*

etiam, adv., *even.*

adrogantia, -ae, f., *arrogance.*

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *contend, strive, hasten, hurry on.*

incendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *burn, set fire to.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *assume, take, spend*

a. Some Latin proper nouns have English equivalents, as : Germānī, *Germans*; Gallī, *Gauls.* For many there are no modern equivalents, as : Rēmī, Labiēnus. The nominative forms of such words are used in English without change. In translating, accent such words according to the Latin rules, but give the letters the English sound.

b. Hereafter proper nouns which are to be used in English without change of form will not be given in the vocabularies.

113. 1. Rēxistī, cēpērunt, pīla iēcerās. 2. Rēctus eris, captī eritis, tēla capta erant. 3. Rēxerās, captus eris, sagittae iactae sunt. 4. Rēximus, volnerātī erāmus, nūntiī missī sunt. 5 Sagittās iēcisse videntur, sagittae iactae esse videntur. 6 Helvētiī lātōs agrōs nōn habēbant 7. Itaque agrōs Haeduōrum occupābant 8. Sed Haeduī, ab Helvētiīs superātī, auxilium rogāvērunt 9. Auxilium statim ā Rōmānīs missum est. 10 In bellō Helvētiī multa oppida et vicōs incenderant.

114. 1. You have ruled, you had conquered, you will have contended. 2. We have ruled, they had been sent, he will have been conquered. 3. To praise, to be praised, to take, to be taken, to have conquered, to have been conquered. 4. Ariovistus had been called friend by the Roman people 5. But he conquered the Gauls in many battles. 6. And so he had assumed great arrogance, and even dared to make war.

CHAPTER XIX

REVIEW OF VERB-FORMS

115. *a.* Review the inflection of the Indicative, both voices, and the present and perfect Infinitive of the model verbs **laudō** (473), **moneō** (476), **regō** (477), **capiō** (478), and **sum** (81, 91).

b. Review the principal parts of the verbs given in 100, 104, 108, 112. These verbs may then be conjugated like the model verbs. See 100, *a.*

c. Write out the list of personal endings of the perfect active

(91); of the other tenses in the active (70) and the passive (74). What is the tense-sign of the imperfect (70, *b*)? of the future in the first and second conjugations (70, *c*)? in the third conjugation (103, *c*)? How may the stem of the perfect always be found (100, *d*)? What is the tense-sign of the pluperfect (99, *c*)? of the future perfect? What is the characteristic vowel of each of the first three conjugations (103, *a*)?

EXERCISES

116. 1. Es, esse, regī, fuisse, laudāvisse, capī. 2. Eris, fueritis, erunt, fuistī, fuerāmus, dominō erant nigrī equī. 3. Laudārī, laudāminī, laudābitis, laudāberis, laudāvistī, laudāverat, puerī laudātī erant. 4 Monēbis, monēbimur, monēberis, monēmur, monuistis, monueritis, puellae monitae erunt. 5. Regitis, regeris, regēris, rēximus, rēxeritis, rēctī erāmus. 6. Capit, caperis, capiēris, cēperit, capientur. 7. Oppida capta sunt, oppidum captum esse vidētur. 8. Līberōs monēre dēbēmus, līberī monērī dēbent. 9 Laudāris, capiēminī, rēctī eritis, monēminī, rēxeris. 10. Estis, monuimus, laudābiminī, monentur, oppida capiēbantur.

117. 1. To be taken, to have ruled, you will be ruled, they are advised. 2. You have been, you have taken, they will be taken, I shall have been warned. 3. You will be, they will be praised, the girls have been warned. 4. You will rule, they were being praised, you ought to be praised. 5. The town seems to have been captured, the inhabitants are now being captured. 6. The poor slave does not have new books. 7. Marcus, the farmer's son, will be a sailor.

PILUM

CHAPTER XX

THIRD DECLENSION : Mute Stems

Ablative of Manner, etc.

118.   *Paradigm*

	rēx, m., *king* rēg-	mīles, m , *soldier* mīlit-	prīnceps, m , *chief* prīncip-	
Stem and Base				

				TERMINATIONS MAS AND FEM
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	rēx	mīles	prīnceps	-s
Gen.	rēgis	mīlitis	prīncipis	-is
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	prīncipī	-ī
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	prīncipem	-em
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	prīncipe	-e
	PLURAL			
Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	-ēs
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	prīncipum	-um
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	-ibus
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	-ēs
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	-ibus

caput. n., *head*   Stem and base, **capit-**

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	caput	—	capita	-a
Gen.	capitis	-is	capitum	-um
Dat.	capitī	-ī	capitibus	-ibus
Acc.	caput	—	capita	-a
Abl.	capite	-e	capitibus	-ibus

a. The stem of nouns of the third declension ends in a conso-
nant or **i**. In consonant stems, which have no characteristic

stem-vowel (22, *b*), the stem and base are the same and are found by dropping -**is** from the genitive singular, and the different cases are formed by adding the terminations to this stem.

b. In the nominative singular the last vowel of the stem is often changed as seen above in **mīles**, **prīnceps**, and **caput**.

c. The consonant **c** or **g** before **s** unites with the **s** and forms **x**, as: **dux**, **ducis** (stem **duc-**), and **rēx**, **rēgis** (stem **rēg-**), while **d** or **t** is dropped before **s**, as in **lapis**, **lapidis** (stem **lapid-**); **virtūs**, **virtūtis** (stem **virtūt-**).

d. Decline together **bonus mīles**, **magna virtūs**, **magnum caput**.

119. RULE. *The ablative with* **cum** *is used to denote manner*, as: **cum dīligentiā labōrant**, *they toil with diligence*, or *diligently*.

a. But the preposition may be omitted if the ablative is modified by an adjective, as: **magnā dīligentiā labōrant**, *they toil with great diligence*.

120. RULE *The ablative with* **cum** *is used to denote accompaniment*, as: **lēgātum cum mīlitibus mittit**, *he sends the lieutenant with the soldiers*.

a. The preposition is rarely omitted.

NOTE. — The ablative with **cum** is also used with verbs of *association* and *contention*, as: **cum Germānīs contendunt**, *they contend with the Germans*; and **cum Catulō habitat**, *he lives with Catulus*.

121.   VOCABULARY

dux, **ducis**, m , *leader*.

pāx, **pācis**, f., *peace*.

lapis, -**idis**, m , *stone*.

custōs, -**ōdis**, m. or f., *guard*, *guardian*, *keeper*.

pēs, **pedis**, m., *foot*.

pedes, -**itis**, m., *foot-soldier*; plu , *infantry*.

eques, -**itis**, m., *horseman*; plu.. *cavalry*.

obses, -**idis**, m., *hostage*.

salūs, -**ūtis**, f., *safety*.

virtūs, -**ūtis**, f., *bravery, courage, virtue*.

fuga, -**ae**, f., *flight*.

dīligentia, -**ae**, f., *diligence, care*

studium, -**ī**, n., *zeal, desire*.

petō, -**ere**, -**īvī** or -**iī**, -**ītus**, *seek, beg*.

122. 1. Fugā equitum territī, etiam sociī salūtem fugā petunt. 2. Cēpistisne tēla, mīlitēs?[1] Gallī lapidēs et pīla iaciunt. 3. Miser mīles, in proeliō volnerātus, est aeger. 4. In castrīs fuit magnus numerus mīlitum volnerātōrum. 5. Pācem cum prīncipibus Galliae faciunt. 6. Dux Crassum, lēgātum, cum multīs equitibus mīsit. 7. Multī mīlitēs lapidibus et pīlīs volnerābantur. 8. Pedēs miserī peditis asperīs lapidibus volnerātī erant. 9. Ubiī, ab equitibus Suēvōrum superātī, pācem petēbant. 10. Lēgātōs mīserant et Germānīs obsidēs dabant.

123. 1. Of a good soldier, of great courage, of good kings. 2 We see the heads of the leaders, we praise the courage of the soldiers. 3. The soldiers fought with zeal and courage 4. The town was saved by the zeal[2] and courage of the leader. 5. Sabinus, the lieutenant, had been sent with a large number of horsemen. 6. The guards were defending the camp with care. 7. By the vigilance of the guards the camp was saved.

[1] 47.　　　　　　　[2] 48.

EQUES
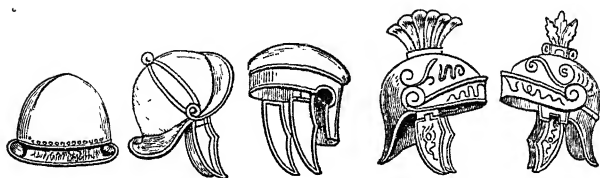
GALEAE

CHAPTER XXI

THIRD DECLENSION: Liquid Stems

124.   *Paradigm*

	cōnsul, m., *consul*	legiō, f., *legion*	homō, m. or f., *man, person*	pater, m., *father*
Stem and Base }	cōnsul-	legiōn-	homin-	patr-
SINGULAR				
Nom.	cōnsul	legiō	homō	pater
Gen.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	hominis	patris
Dat.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	hominī	patrī
Acc.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	hominem	patrem
Abl.	cōnsule	legiōne	homine	patre
PLURAL				
Nom.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	hominum	patrum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus

a. Decline together **magnus labor, magna multitūdō.**

125.   Neuters

Stem and Base	nōmen, n , *name* nōmin-	genus, n , *race* gener-	corpus, n., *body* corpor-	iter, n , *road* itiner-
	SINGULAR			
Nom	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Gen	nōminis	generis	corporis	itineris
Dat.	nōminī	generī	corporī	itinerī
Acc.	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Abl.	nōmine	genere	corpore	itinere
	PLURAL			
Nom.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Gen.	nōminum	generum	corporum	itinerum
Dat.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus
Acc.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Abl.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus

a. Decline together **magnum iter** and **flūmen longum.**

126.   VOCABULARY

ad, prep. with acc., *to, to-ward, near.*

flōs, -ōris, m , *flower.*

flūmen, -inis, n , *river.*

frāter, -tris, m., *brother.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, class, kind.*

iter, itineris, n., *road, route, march.*

labor, -ōris, m., *labor, work.*

māter, -tris, f , *mother.*

multitūdō, -inis, f., *multi-tude, great number.*

semper,' adv., *always, ever.*

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl, throw.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *know, understand.*

EXERCISES

127. 1. Nōmina rēgum, capita equōrum, pedēs hominum.
2. Cōnsul multīs cum legiōnibus peditum iter faciēbat. 3.
Fīliīs et fīliābus rēgis sunt pulchrī equī. 4. Līberī bonī ā
patribus et mātribus semper amantur. 5. Multī agrī et
vīcī ā rēgis mīlitibus incendiō vāstābantur. 6 Casticī[1] pater
rēgnum in Sēquanīs[1] obtinēbat. 7. Nōnne magnum nu-
merum equitum peditumque ad flūmen vidēs? 8. Mīlitēs
multitūdinem lapidum et pīlōrum coniciēbant. 9. Multī
hominēs lapidibus et pīlīs mīlitum volnerātī sunt.

128. 1. We see the large horses and good horsemen. 2.
The large bodies and great courage of the Germans fright-
ened the Roman soldiers. 3. The soldiers will make the
long march with great safety. 4. Do you know the names
and kinds of flowers? 5. With great zeal the farmer's son
is working in the field with father and brother. 6 The
Roman legions will defend the name and safety of their
country by bravery.

[1] 112 *a, b.*
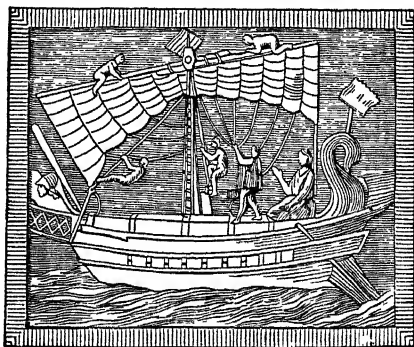
NAVIS ET NAUTAE

CHAPTER XXII

THIRD DECLENSION: i-Stems

Genitive of Quality

129.   *Paradigm*

	hostis, m., *enemy*	turris, f., *tower*	vīs, f., *force*, plu., *strength*	imber, m., *rain*	
Stem:	hosti-	turri-	vī-, vīri-	imbri-	
Base	host-	turr-	vī-, vīr-	imbr-	

	SINGULAR				TERMINA-TIONS.
Nom.	hostis	turris	vīs	imber	-is
Gen.	hostis	turris	vīs	imbris	-is
Dat.	hostī	turrī	vī	imbrī	-ī
Acc.	hostem	turrim,-em	vim	imbrem	-em, -im
Abl.	hoste	turrī, -e	vī	imbrī, -e	-ī, -e

	PLURAL				
Nom.	hostēs	turrēs	vīrēs	imbrēs	-ēs
Gen.	hostium	turrium	vīrium	imbrium	-ium
Dat.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus
Acc.	hostīs, ēs	turrīs, -ēs	vīrīs, -ēs	imbrīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Abl.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus

130. Pure i-stems include:

1. Parisyllabic[1] nouns in -is and four in -er.[2]
2. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

[1] A parisyllabic noun is one whose genitive case has the same number of syllables as the nominative

[2] imber, linter, uter, venter

131.   Neuters

	mare, n., *sea*	animal, n., *animal*	calcar, n., *spur*	
Stem:	mari-	animali-	calcari-	
Base:	mar-	animal-	calcar-	

	SINGULAR			CASE ENDINGS
Nom.	mare	animal	calcar	——
Gen.	maris	animalis	calcaris	-is
Dat.	marī	animalī	calcārī	-ī
Acc.	mare	animal	calcar	——
Abl.	marī	animalī	calcārī	-ī

	PLURAL			
Nom.	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
Gen.	marium [1]	animālium	calcārium	-ium
Dat.	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
Acc.	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
Abl	maribus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

132. *a.* Nouns with i-stems have -ium in the genitive plural.

b. All neuters have the nominative and accusative plural in -ia.

c. The accusative plural, masculine and feminine, ends in -īs or -ēs.

d. The accusative singular of a few words ends in -im, as: turris, *tower*, acc. turrim.

e. The ablative singular of neuters ends in -ī; also a few nouns of the other genders sometimes have the ablative singular in -ī, as: avis, cīvis, fīnis, ignis, nāvis, turris.

---

[1] The genitive plural of **mare** is sometimes written **marum**.

133.   VOCABULARY

collis, -is, m , *hill.*

excursiō, -ōnis, f , *raid.*

iūmentum, -ī, n , *pack-an-imal.*

onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

crēber, -bra, -brum, *fre-quent, repeated.*

atque, or ac, conj , *and.*

ex, or ē, prep with abl , *out of, from.*

locō or conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, station*

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *consume.*

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *erect, station, arrange, determine.*

NOTE. — The forms atque and ex are used before vowels or h, and sometimes before consonants ; ac and ē, the shortened forms of atque and ex, are used only before consonants. Compare 76, *c.*

EXERCISES

134. 1. In agrīs sunt multa genera flōrum. 2. Multa animālia altō in marī habitant. 3. Quis cōnstituit altam turrim in colle? 4. Rōmānī erant virī magnae virtūtis.[1] 5. Magnīs vīribus turrīs magnī oneris[1] in mūrō conlocābant. 6. In bellō Helvētiī multa iūmenta habēbant. 7. Multum frūmentum ā magnā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbātur. 8. Equitēs crēbrās excursiōnēs ex oppidō faciēbant. 9. Haeduī Ariovistō ac Sēquanīs obsidēs dederant. 10. Gallī virtūte ac studiō equitum Rōmānōrum terrēbantur.

135. 1. The deep seas are inhabited by many kinds of animals. 2. Near the river was a high hill. 3. Foot-soldiers were stationed on the hill by the leader. 4. Cæsar praised the courage and zeal of the soldiers. 5. Much grain will be destroyed by the frequent raids of the cavalry.

[1] The words **magnae virtūtis** together in 4 express the

quality of the Romans, and **magnī oneris** in 5 describe the towers. Such a use of the genitive with an adjective is called the *descriptive genitive* or *genitive of quality*.

136. RULE. *A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the genitive to denote quality.*

CHAPTER XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION: Mixed i-Stems

Ablative of Cause

137. Nouns with mixed i-stems are declined in the singular like nouns with consonant stems; in the plural like nouns with i-stems, thus:

Paradigm

	caedēs, f., *slaughter* Variable Stem: caed(i)- Base: caed-	arx f., *citadel* arc (i)- arc-	cliēns, m , *client* client(i)- client-	cīvitās, f. *state* cīvitāt(i)- cīvitāt-
	SINGULAR			
Nom	caedēs	arx	cliēns	cīvitās
Gen.	caedis	arcis	clientis	cīvitātis
Dat.	caedī	arcī	clientī	cīvitātī
Acc.	caedem	arcem	clientem	cīvitātem
Abl	caede	arce	cliente	cīvitāte
	PLURAL			
Nom.	caedēs	arcēs	clientēs	cīvitātēs
Gen.	caedium	arcium	clientium	cīvitātum (-ium)
Dat.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus
Acc.	caedīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	clientīs, -ēs	cīvitātīs, -ēs
Abl.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus

138. Mixed i-stems include:

1. Parisyllabic nouns in -ēs.

2. Monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by a consonant, as: pōns, arx, etc.

3. Nouns in -ns and -rs, as . cliēns, cohors, etc.

4. Nouns in -tās.

NOTE. — Nouns in -tās generally have -um instead of -ium in the genitive plural

139. Gender in the Third Declension

1. Most nouns in -ĕs which increase in the genitive, also nouns in -er, -or, and -ōs, are masculine.

2 Nouns in -ēs which do not increase in the genitive, also nouns in -ō, -ās, -is, -ūs (gen -ūtis or -ūdis), -x, and those in -s preceded by a consonant, are feminine.

3. Nouns in -a, -e, -l, -n, -ar, -ŭs (gen. -oris or -eris), are neuter

NOTE — Many exceptions to these rules will be found. But these are best learned from practice   Of course all nouns denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine, whatever the ending may be (19, a).

140.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Custōdēs vigilantiā laudātī sunt.
The guards were praised for their vigilance.

a. In this sentence **vigilantiā** denotes the cause or reason why the guards were praised, and may be translated *because of, by reason of, on account of, for,* etc.

141. RULE.   *Cause is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

142.   VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

celeritās, -ātis, f., *swift-*
ness.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
get together, procure.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, *neigh-*
boring, near; plu., *neigh-*
bors.

hīberna, -ōrum, plu., n.,
winter quarters.

magnitūdō, -inis, f , *great-*
ness, size.

opus, -eris, n., *work.*

permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī,
-mōtus, *move greatly,*
trouble.

pondus, -eris, n., *weight.*

saxum, -ī, n., *rock.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time.*

urbs, -is, f., *city.*

EXERCISES

143. 1. Arx in altō colle conlocāta est.   2. Custōdēs
arcem virtūte dēfendent.   3. Saxa magnī ponderis in mūrō
conlocāta erant.   4. Hostēs magnitūdine operis et celeri-
tāte[1] Rōmānōrum permōtī sunt.   5. Caesar magnum equi-
tum numerum ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus comparāvit.   6 Dux
cum cōpiīs[2] equitum magnā celeritāte[3] iter faciēbat.   7.
Custōdēs arcis ā rēgis mīlitibus interficiēbantur.   8. Nūn-
tius ducī caedem custōdum nūntiāvit.   9. Mīlitēs urbem
etiam incendere audēbant.   10. Annī tempore[1] atque im-
bribus legiōnēs in Senonibus[4] in hībernīs conlocābantur.

144. 1. The neighboring states will send deputies.   2.
Deputies of great vigilance will be sent by many states.
3. We praise the work and labor of the soldiers.   4. The
leaders ought to be praised for their courage.[1]   5. We will
always seek the peace and safety of the state.   6. The Hel-
vetii made war with the neighboring states with great zeal.

---

[1] 141.   [2] 120.   [3] 119, *a.*

[4] The ending -**ibus** shows that this word is of the third declension, and
the nominative plural must therefore be **Senonēs**.   See 112, *a, b.*

CHAPTER XXIV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Adjectives of One Termination

145. *a.* **prūdēns**, *wise, sagacious*; stem, **prūdenti-**, base, **prūdent-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS AND FEM	NEU	MAS AND FEM.	NEU
Nom.	prūdēns	prūdēns	prūdentēs	prūdentia
Gen.	prūdentis	prūdentis	prūdentium	prūdentium
Dat.	prūdentī	prūdentī	prūdentibus	prūdentibus
Acc.	prūdentem	prūdēns	prūdentīs, -ēs	prūdentia
Abl.	prūdentī	prūdentī	prūdentibus	prūdentibus

b **audāx**, *bold*: stem, **audāci-**; base, **audāc-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS AND FEM.	NEU	MAS AND FEM.	NEU
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Abl.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

c. **vetus**, *old*: stem and base, **veter-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS AND FEM	NEU	MAS AND FEM	NEU
Nom.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Gen.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
Dat.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Acc.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Abl.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

Adjectives of Two Terminations

146. omnis, *all*: stem, **omni-** ; base, **omn-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS AND FEM	NEU	MAS AND FEM.	NEU
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
Abl	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

Adjectives of Three Terminations

147. ācer, *eager, active, spirited*: stem, **ācri-** ; base, **ācr-**

	SINGULAR		
	MAS	FEM	NEU.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	PLURAL		
Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. In all cases, except the nominative and accusative, all adjectives of the third declension have one form for all genders.

b. Most adjectives of the third declension ending in -**er** have three terminations in the nominative singular like **ācer**, those in -**is** two like **omnis**, all others only one.

c. All adjectives of the third declension with three terminations like **ācer**, or with two terminations like **omnis**, have i-stems, and always have ī in the ablative singular.

d. Adjectives of one termination, except **vetus** and a very few others, also have ī-stems, and end in ī (rarely e) in the ablative.

NOTE — Adjectives, though they must always agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns which they limit, often belong to a different declension.

148. Decline together **fortis dux, breve tempus, ācer equus, audāx bellum, bonus mīles, pulchra urbs.**

149.   VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, *nar-row.*

brevis, -e, *short.*

celer, -eris, -ere, *swift, quick.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero.*

cōnsul, -is, m , *consul.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw.*

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out.*

fortis, -e, *brave.*

gravis, -e, *heavy, severe.*

imperātor, -ōris, m., *com-mander.*

redūcō, -ere, dūxī, -ductus, *lead back*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine.*

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across*

trāns, prep. with acc , *across, on the other side of.*

EXERCISES

150. 1. Onera fortium mīlitum sunt gravia. 2. Dux ācer ad fīnitimam cīvitātem cum omnibus cōpiīs contendit. 3. Nōnne incolae oppidī erant audācēs et validī? 4. Quis pulchram urbem prūdentī cōnsiliō servāvit? Urbs ā Cicerōne, cōnsule, servāta est. 5. Veterēs cōpiae hostium ā fortī duce dūcēbantur. 6. Audācēs equitēs salūtem celerī fugā petiērunt. 7. Ex castrīs ācrīs cōpiās ēdūxit et legiōnēs in colle cōnstituit. 8. Sed mox fortēs mīlitēs ad castra re-

dūcentur. 9 Ariovistus multitūdinem audācium hominum trāns flūmen Rhēnum trādūxit. 10. Novus imperātor cum veteribus hostium cōpiīs contendere audēbat

151. 1. The road was short and narrow. 2. All the inhabitants of the city were brave. 3. A bold horseman loves a spirited horse. 4 The brave leader was praised by all the soldiers. 5. Many legions of veteran troops had been stationed on the other side of the river. 6. The neighbors were frightened by the frequent and rapid raids of the cavalry.

CHAPTER XXV

REVIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Reading Lesson

152. Review the paradigms given in 118, 124, 125, 129, 131, 137. Write out the list of terminations of nouns of the third declension with consonant stems as given in 118. Give the rules for i-stems (130. 138), and write the list of terminations, masculine and feminine (129), neuter (131). How do these terminations differ from those of nouns with consonant stems? Give the rules of gender for nouns of the third declension (139).

153. Decline the following nouns, taken from vocabularies 121, 126, 133, 142, giving the stem, gender, and meaning :

dux	eques	labor	excursiō
pāx	virtūs	flōs	urbs
lapis	salūs	flūmen	pondus
custōs	multitūdō	collis	celeritās
pēs	māter	obses	tempus
pedes	frāter	onus	opus

154. DEMOSTHENES THE ORATOR

Dēmosthenēs[1] fuit ōrātōrum prīnceps. Nātūrā bonam vōcem nōn habuit. Verba nōn rēctē prōnūntiābat. Itaque magnō labōre ac studiō impedīmentum vōcis superāre cōnstituit. Parvōs lapidēs in ōre locāvit et in maris lītore multās ōrātiōnēs prōnūntiāvit. Magnā dīligentiā omnia impedīmenta vīcit Tum apud multitūdinem hominum ōrātiōnēs habēre[2] audēbat. Clāmōre populī excitātī nōn permōtus est. Ēloquentiā populum ad bellum contrā Philippum, rēgem Macedoniae,[1] excitāvit et patriam servāvit.

155. SPECIAL VOCABULARY

apud, prep. with acc., *in the presence of.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *shout, clamor.*

contrā, prep. with acc , *against.*

ēloquentia, -ae, f., *eloquence.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *excite, arouse.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n., *impediment.*

lītus, -oris, n., *shore.*

nātūra, -ae, f., *nature.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *oration, speech*

ōrātor, -ōris, m., *orator.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth.*

patria, -ae, f., *country, native land.*

Philippus, -ī, m., *Philip.*

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pronounce, utter, deliver.*

rēctē, adv , *correctly.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, speech.*

---

[1] 112, *b.* [2] **habēre** with **ōrātiōnem** = *deliver an oration,* or *make a speech.*

TUBA

CHAPTER XXVI

READING LESSON WITH INTRODUCTION TO CÆSAR

Ablative of Specification

NOTE. — The meaning of the reading lessons and of many of the sentences in the various exercises that follow will be plainer to the pupils if they study the following

156. INTRODUCTION TO THE READING LESSONS

During the period of conquest and expansion the Romans used to annex all conquered territory as provinces. It was customary for the consuls and prætors to have their power extended for the year after their term of office. Under the title of proconsul or proprætor they were sent to govern these provinces. In B C 58, Cæsar, who had been consul the year before, took command of the province of Gaul.

Ancient Gaul comprised for the most part the territory now occupied by France, Holland, and Belgium. The Helvetii, one of the bravest tribes of Gaul, occupied what is now Switzerland. On the other side of the Rhine were the Germans. About the time when Cæsar took command of Gaul, a large number of Germans crossed the Rhine and were about to dispossess the Gauls of their land. The Helvetii also, hemmed in by too narrow limits, were just preparing to migrate to the west in search of more spacious dwelling-places.

The territory of the Hædui, one of the most powerful Gallic tribes, who were friends of the Romans, was especially threatened. So they appealed to Cæsar for help. Thus Cæsar was brought into war with the Helvetii, later with Ariovistus, king of the Germans, then with other tribes of

Gaul. Hostilities with various tribes continued for eight years, during which Cæsar proved himself a great general.

After finishing the campaign in Gaul, Cæsar became a rival of Pompey for the supremacy in Rome. The civil war followed, the republic was overthrown, and Cæsar became absolute ruler of Rome. As a ruler Cæsar was no less successful in organizing the new government than he had been in conquering the Gauls. But his great achievements were suddenly brought to an end by his assassination in 44 B C

Cæsar himself wrote an account of his several campaigns in Gaul. These accounts make up the Commentaries of Cæsar, which are now read in schools. From these Commentaries many of the exercises and passages for translation in this book are taken.

157. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Mārcus frātrem virtūte superat.

Marcus surpasses his brother in courage.

Virtūte is in the ablative case, and tells *in what respect* Marcus excels.

158. RULE. *The ablative of specification is used to tell in what respect a thing is true.*

159. READING LESSON

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partīs trīs. Belgae et Aquitānī et Celtae Galliam incolunt. Celtae ā Rōmānīs Gallī appellantur. Helvētiī quoque sunt pars Celtārum. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. Cum Germānīs Helvētiī crēbrīs proeliīs contendunt. Itaque Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant. Sed magnō dolōre adficiēbantur, quod angustōs fīnīs habēbant. Praetereā altīs montibus et lātīs flūminibus continēbantur.

160.   **VOCABULARY**

dolor, -ōris, m , *grief, sor-*
row

fīnis, -is, m., *end* ; plu., *borders,*
territory.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain,*
hill.

pars, -tis, f., *part* ; *side* (of a
river), *direction* (of a march).

praetereā, adv., *besides,*
moreover.

quod, conj., *because.*

quoque, adv., *also.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *rest, re-*
maining, the rest of.

trēs, tria, like plu. of om-
nis, *three*

adficiō, · ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *affect, afflict.*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, contentus, *hold, restrain,*
hem in, bound.

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide.*

incolō, -ere, -uī, ——, *dwell, live, inhabit.*

CHAPTER XXVII

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES AND THE RULES OF SYNTAX

161. Review the declension of adjectives, 53, 61, 145–147;
and the rules of syntax, 29–31, 38, 40, 47, 48, 54, 83, 85, 87, 93,
119, 120, 136, 141, 158.

READING LESSON

162. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilis fuit et dīves vir, nōmine
Orgetorīx. Clientium magnum numerum habēbat. Rēgnī
cupiditāte inductus, Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis
fēcit.   Casticus rēgnum in cīvitāte multōs annōs[1] obtinuerat.
Dumnorīx erat audāx homō apud Haeduōs.   Trium gentium
prīncipēs omnem Galliam regere cupīvērunt. Sed coniū-
rātiō est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta et cīvitās Orgetorīgem dam-
nāre parābat.   Sed Orgetorīx auxiliō multōrum clientium

[1] NOTE.— For case of **annōs** in 162, see 220, 221.

·ffūgit. Tamen breve erat spatium vītae. Modus mortis ·st incertus.

NOTE. — The few words in this passage not used before will be found in he general vocabulary.

CHAPTER XXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION: Indicative (*complete*)

Comparative View of the Four Conjugations

163. Learn the conjugation of audiō through the indicative mood, active and passive (479), also learn the present and perfect infinitive, active and passive.

Comparative Review

164. Compare the forms of audiō with the corresponding forms of laudō, moneō, regō, and capiō, as given in 473, 476, 477, 478. Conjugate each of these verbs through the indicative mood, both voices. What are the characteristic vowels of the four conjugations (103, *a*)? Illustrate by giving the present infinitive active of a verb of each conjugation.

How is the present infinitive passive formed from the active? Cf. 75, *c*, and 103, *d*. Give the present infinitive passive of a verb of each conjugation. Give the personal endings of the perfect indicative active; also of the other tenses.

What is the tense-sign of the imperfect? the pluperfect? the future perfect? What Latin tenses will express the meaning of the English *I was praising*? *I have praised*? *I praised*? Why do we need to give the principal parts of verbs?

Give the present stem of a verb of each of the four conjugations, and tell what other tenses are formed from the same stem. What tenses are formed from the perfect stem? How is the perfect stem found? Write the perfect stem of laudō, moneō, regō, capiō, audiō. In what tenses are all verbs conjugated alike?

165.   VOCABULARY

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike,*   mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,
   fond of war.   *hasten, make haste.*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, race,*   mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *for-*
   nation.   *tify.*

glōria, -ae, f , *honor, reputa-*   pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *pun-*
   tion, glory.   *ish.*

maleficium, -ī, n., *harm, mis-*   veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus,
   chief.   *come.*

EXERCISES

166. 1 Audīs, capis, audiēbās, nōn audītī erant. 2. Au-
diar, audīris, caperis, audiēris. 3. Audīverāmus, audiētis,
audītī eritis, audientur. 4. Audīre, pūnīrī, pūnītus erās,
quis pūnītus est ? 5. Audīvisse, pūnītus esse, veniēbat,
vēnit 6. Audītī eritis, audiēminī, audiēbāminī, audīvistis.
7. Venīre mātūrat, laudārī dēbent, urbs magnā vī mūnīta
est. 8. Mīlitēs asperī maleficiō ā prūdentī imperātōre pū-
nientur. 9. Equitēs erant audācēs et celeritāte hostīs
superābant. 10. Hostēs, clāmōribus equitum permōtī, in
castra venīre mātūrāvērunt. 11 Equitēs bellicōsī erant.

167. 1. We hear, you will punish, they have come, the
camp will be fortified. 2. He will have been heard, shouts
were heard, the camp has been fortified. 3. Shouts seem
to have been heard, the camp ought to be fortified and
defended. 4. The leader heard the shouts and at once
made haste to fortify the camp. 5. The Helvetii sur-
passed the neighboring tribes in bravery.

CHAPTER XXIX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Ablative with the Comparative

168. 1. There are three degrees of comparison in Latin as in English, as :

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
cārus, *dear*	cārior, *dearer*	cārissimus, *dearest*

2 The comparative is regularly formed by adding -ior (neu. -ius), and the superlative by adding -issimus (-a, -um) to the base of the positive.

NOTE. — The base of the positive of any adjective is found by dropping the termination of the genitive singular, as : **altus**, genitive **altī**, base **alt-**.

3. Compare the following :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, *high*	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis, *brave*	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
audāx, *bold*	audācior, audācius	audācissimus, -a, -um
potēns, *powerful*	potentior, potentius	potentissimus, -a, -um

169. The superlative is declined like **bonus**, -a, -um (53). The comparative is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MAS AND FEM	NEU	MAS. AND FEM	NEU
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

NOTE. — The ablative singular rarely ends in -ī, as : **altiōrī**.

170. Decline together **audācior cōnsul**, and **audācius animal**.

171. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Elephantus altior est quam equus. ⎱ *The elephant is taller than the horse.*
2. Elephantus equō altior est. ⎰

In 1 **quam** means *than*, and the two words representing the two things compared are in the same case. In 2 **quam** is omitted and **equō** is in the ablative.

172. RULE. *The ablative is used with the comparative without* **quam**.

NOTE — The ablative denotes the standard from which comparison is made (from the horse, as a standard, the elephant is taller), and is generally, though not always, placed before the comparative. The ablative without **quam** can be used only in place of the nominative or accusative case.

173. VOCABULARY

amīcitia, -ae, f , *friendship*.
Carolus, -ī, m , *Charles*.
cārus, -a, -um, *dear, precious*.
clārus, -a, -um, *clear, famous*.
culpa, -ae, f., *blame*.
Edvardus, -ī, m., *Edward*.
Henrīcus, -ī, m., *Henry*.

laus, laudis, f., *praise*.
leō, leōnis, m., *lion*.
nihil, indcl. noun, n., *nothing*.
prōcēdō, -ere, prōcessī, prōcessūrus, *go forward, advance, proceed*.
vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

EXERCISES

174. 1. Lātius flūmen, altissima maria, ā clāriōre virō. 2. Carolus frātre Henrīcō altior est. 3. Elephantus leōne est validior, sed leō est ācrius animal. 4. Quid vītā est cārius? 5. Fortī virō vīta patria est cārior. 6. Rōmānīs pīla longiōra fuērunt quam Gallīs. 7. Edvardō pater pulchriōrem librum nōn dedit quam frātrī Carolō. 8. Angustissima maria lātissimīs flūminibus sunt lātiōra. 9. Cum

celerrimīs[1] equitibus Gallī in proelium prōcessērunt. 10. Patriam dēfendere est pulcherrimum.[1]

175. 1. A swifter horse, a longer javelin, the deepest rivers. 2. Of a braver man, by a braver man, with the bravest men. 3. The eagle is swifter than the horse. 4. Many birds[2] are swifter than the swiftest[1] horses. 5. To all men praise is dearer than blame. 6. But to the wisest man friendship is most dear. 7. Nothing is dearer than friendship.

[1] See 176.   [2] For **avis**, f., *bird*, see 132 *e*.

CHAPTER XXX

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*continued*)

Ablative of Measure of Difference

176. Adjectives in -er form the superlative by adding -rimus, thus:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser. *wretched*	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
aeger. *sick*	aegrior, -ius	aegerrimus, -a, -um
ācer, *eager*	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

177. Six adjectives in -lis form the superlative in -limus, thus :

facilis, *easy*	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, *difficult*	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, *like*	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, *unlike*	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, *slender* .	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
humilis, *low*	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um

NOTE. — Other adjectives in **-lis** are compared regularly, as : fidēlis, *faithful*, fidēlior, fidēlissimus.

178. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Mōns est altior,** *the mountain is rather* (or *quite*) *high.*

2. **Mōns est altissimus,** *the mountain is very high.*

a. Sometimes the comparative and superlative are used in a general sense without reference to any particular person or thing. Then the comparative means *rather, quite, too,* etc., and the superlative means *very, exceedingly.*

179. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Turris multīs pedibus altior est quam mūrus.

The tower is many feet (by many feet) *higher than the wall.*

180. RULE. *The measure of difference is expressed by the ablative*

181. **VOCABULARY**

arma, -ōrum, plu., n., *arms.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, advice; council.*

difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*

ferāx, -ācis, *fertile.*

Georgius, -ī, m , *George.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*

nam, conj., *for.*

potēns, -tis, *powerful.*

vallēs, -is, f., *valley.*

volnus, -eris, n., *wound.*

EXERCISES

182. 1. Urbs pulchra, urbis pulchriōris, in urbibus pulcherrimīs. 2. Dux mīlite est potentior, rēx est potentissimus. 3. Cōnsilia hostium lūce clāriōra sunt. 4. Henrīcō Georgius capite est altior. 5. Arma Rōmānōrum fuērunt graviōra. 6. Omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt Helvētiī. 7. Sed angustiōrēs fīnīs habēbant. 8. Nam flūmine Rhēnō

lātissimō atque altissimō continēbantur. 9. Itaque lātiōrēs et ferāciōrēs agrōs petēbant. 10. Iter inter montīs et flūmen erat angustius et difficillimum. 11. Angustō itinere magnā cum difficultāte carrōs gravissimōs dūcēbant.

183. 1. More severe wounds, in a fiercer battle, of a more fertile valley. 2. In a very narrow valley, between the loftiest mountains. 3. The river is quite deep. 4. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers. 5. The horse is a very beautiful and a very swift animal. 6 The poor soldier is very sick, for the wounds are most severe. 7. The man is a foot taller than the boy.

TEMPLUM JOVIS CAPITOLINI
(Medallion)

CHAPTER XXXI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: Irregular Comparison

The Partitive Genitive

184. Some adjectives are irregular in comparison, as :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *worst*
magnus, *great*	maior, *greater*	maximus, *greatest*
parvus, *small*	minor, *less*	minimus, *least*
multus, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimus, *most*

185. Declension of **plūs,** *more*; plural, *more, many, several.*

		SINGULAR	PLURAL	
	MAS AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS AND FEM	NEU
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

186. Some forms of the following adjectives are rarely found. Learn only those which are starred, and use the others merely for reference when needed.

1. Positive wanting:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
——	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
——	dēterior, *worse*	dēterrimus, *worst*
——	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
*——	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
*——·	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *nearest, next, last*
*——	ulterior, *farther*	ultimus, *farthest, last*

2. Positive rare except when used as nouns:

exterus, *outside*	exterior, *outer*	extrēmus (extimus), *outermost, farthest*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus or īmus, *lowest*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus (postumus), *last*
superus, *above*	superior, *higher*	suprēmus or summus, *highest, greatest*

Illustrative Examples

187. 1 pars mīlitum, *a part of the soldiers.*

2. plūs dolōris, *more* (of) *grief*

3. nihil frūmentī, *no* (nothing of) *grain.*

4. fortissimus mīlitum, *the bravest* (one) *of the soldiers.*

188. Rule. *The genitive is often used after a word expressing a part.*

Note — This genitive is called the *partitive genitive*

189. VOCABULARY

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *establish, assure.*

crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring in, import.*

locus, -ī, m., *place, position*; plu., loca, -ōrum, n.

multus, -a, -um, *much*; multō, *much, by much* (180).

poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*

verbum, -ī, n., *word.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shun, avoid.*

vitium, -ī, n., *vice, fault.*

EXERCISES

190. 1. Peior poena, peius volnus, maior lapis, maius vitium. 2. Minor urbs, minus oppidum, minimae urbēs. 3. Bellō nihil est crūdēlius. 4. Dīviciācus cum plūribus verbīs pācem ā Caesare petit. 5. Dīviciācus plūs quam frāter dolōris[1] cēpit,[2] nam in cīvitāte multō potentior erat. 6. Suēvōrum gēns est maxima et bellicōsissima omnium Gallōrum. 7. Nihil vīnī important et peiōra vitia vītant. 8 Lēgātus ex citeriōre[3] Galliā novissimās legiōnēs in interiōrem[3] Galliam dūxit. 9. Mīlitēs prīmae legiōnis

---

[1] 188. The genitive is often, as here, separated from the word it limits.

[2] cēpit; *took, received, felt.* [3] 186, 1.

ē superiōre locō tēla coniciēbant.   10 Maximīs itineribus
in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit.

191. 1. For better men, by more prudent plans, by a
braver leader, in a smaller town. 2 Of large rivers, into
most beautiful cities, by the best and bravest leader. 3.
Peace is much better than war. 4. They establish peace
and friendship with the nearest states. 5. The Helvetii
were braver than most tribes. 6. For they were nearest
to the most warlike nations.

CHAPTER XXXII

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

192. 1. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives and are
compared in a similar way.

2. Adverbs may be formed from adjectives of the second
declension by substituting -ē for the final -ī of the genitive sin-
gular; from adjectives of the third declension adverbs may be
formed by substituting -iter for -is of the genitive singular.

ADJECTIVE	GENITIVE	ADVERB
cārus, *dear*	cārī	cārē, *dearly*
pulcher, *beautiful*	pulchrī	pulchrē, *beautifully*
līber, *free*	līberī	līberē, *freely*
fortis, *brave*	fortis	fortiter, *bravely*
ācer, *fierce*	ācris	ācriter, *fiercely*

NOTE. — Adjectives in **-ns** require only **-er** to be added to the base to form
the adverb, as :

prūdēns, *wise,*   **prūdentis**,   **prūdenter**, *wisely.*

From **audāx** is formed **audācter**, *boldly.* And **facile**, the neuter form
of **facilis**, is used as an adverb without change in form.

3. The comparative of the adverb has the same form as the
neuter comparative of the adjective.

4   The superlative of the adverb is formed by substituting -ē for the final -us of the superlative of the adjective.

193. ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS		
POSITIVE	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
cārus, *dear*	cārē	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher, *beautiful*	pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortis, *brave*	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
prūdēns, *wise*	prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
audāx, *bold*	audācter	audācius	audācissimē
facilis, *easy*	facile	facilius	facillimē

194. Adverbs from irregular adjectives (184):

bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best, excellently*
male, *badly*	peius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
——	magis, *more, rather*	maximē, *most, mostly*
parum, *too little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least, by no means*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *the most, very much*
prope, *nearly, almost*	propius, *nearer*	proximē (186, 1), *most nearly, last*

195. Adverbs not formed from adjectives :

saepe, *often*	saepius	saepissimē
diū, *a long time*	diūtius	diūtissimē

196. Quam with the superlative makes the highest possible degree, as :

1. **Quam maximus numerus,** *the greatest possible number.*

2. **Quam fortissimē,** *as bravely as possible.*

adflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *damage.*

celeriter, adv., *quickly.*

crūdēliter, adv., *cruelly.*

cupidē, adv., *eagerly.*

fīrmus, -a, -um, *firm, strong.*

graviter, adv., *severely, heavily.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule, order, command.*

integer, -gra, -grum, *unimpaired, fresh.*

libenter, adv., *gladly.*

longē, adv., *far away, far.*

paulum, *little;* paulō, abl., *by a little, little* (180).

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *repair.*

superbē, adv., *proudly.*

vehementer, adv., *vehemently, greatly.*

EXERCISES

198. 1. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. 2. Superbē et crūdēliter imperat. 3. Mīlitēs integrīs vīribus fortius pugnāvērunt. 4. Oppidum, ā duce prūdentiōre mūnītum, vehementissimē oppugnātum est. 5. Custōdēs celeriter arma cēpērunt et oppidum diū atque ācriter dēfendērunt. 6. Mīlitibus nōn minōrem laudem quam ducī dare dēbēmus. 7. Germānī, clāmōribus equitum permōtī, paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessērunt. 8. Rōmānī partem minimē fīrmam hostium ācrius et vehementius oppugnāvērunt. 9. Nāvēs gravissimē adflīctae erant, sed cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus reficiēbantur. 10. Caesar frūmentum quam celerrimē comparāvit et proximō itinere ad hostīs contendit.

199. 1. Ariovistus had most eagerly sought Cæsar's friendship. 2. Now he not less gladly rejected peace. 3. All the hills and higher places were bravely held by the infantry. 4. Ambassadors were very quickly sent to the largest states. 5. More easily and more quickly they made

the march. 6. The town, having been quickly fortified, will be defended most bravely.

CHAPTER XXXIII

TEN ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS

Declension of ūnus, duo, trēs, and mīlle

200. The following ten adjectives have -ius in the genitive singular and -ī in the dative of all the genders (except that the genitive of alter generally has -īus). The plural is regular. See 461.

alius, alia, aliud, *other, another.*
nūllus, -a, -um, *no, no one, none.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole, only.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, all, entire.*
ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one*; plur. *alone, only.*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (of two).
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* (of two).
uter, utra, utrum, *which* (of two) ?
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each* (of the two), *both.*

201. *a.* Aliī . . . aliī in contrasted clauses means *some . . . others,* as : aliī prōcēdēbant, aliī remanēbant, *some advanced, others remained.*

In like manner alter . . . alter means *the one . . . the other,* as : alter prōcēdēbat, alter remanēbat, *the one advanced, the other remained.*

b. One form of alius followed by another *in the same clause* is equivalent to the English double statement *one . . . one, another . . . another,* as : legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte pugnābant, *some legions were fighting in one place, others in another.*

202. Declension of ūnus, *one*; duo, *two*; trēs, *three*; mīlle, *a thousand*.

	MAS	FEM	NEU	MAS AND FEM	NEU
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, -īs	tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus
	MAS.	FEM	NEU	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

a. As an adjective meaning *alone, only*, ūnus has a regular plural like bonus (53).

b. Trēs is declined just like the plural of omnis (146).

c. Mīlle, *one thousand*, is generally used as an indeclinable adjective, as: mīlle mīlitēs, *a thousand soldiers.* The plural is a noun followed by the partitive genitive, as: duo mīlia mīlitum, *two thousand soldiers.*

d. Decline together neuter obses, altera pars, aliud tempus.

203.   VOCABULARY

attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign, give over to.*

cohors, -tis, f., *cohort.*

concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *yield to, give up to, grant.*

maneō or remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -sūrus, *remain.*

per, prep. with acc., *through.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *danger.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

EXERCISES

204. 1. Tria mīlia pedum, cum mīlle mīlitibus, cum duō-
bus mīlibus equitum. 2. Germānī Suēvīs ūnīs concēdunt.
3. Diviciācus sōlus obsidēs dare recūsāvit. 4. Vīcus in duās
partīs flūmine dīvidēbātur. 5. Alteram partem vīcī Gallīs
concessit, alteram cohortibus lēgātus attribuit. 6. Alterī
ducī mīlle equitēs, alterī duo mīlia peditum attribuit. 7. Aliī
laudātī, aliī pūnītī sunt.[1] 8. Aliī aliam in partem fugiēbant.
9. Erant duo fortissimī virī in ūnā legiōne. 10. Uterque
in ācerrimō proeliō volnerātus est. 11. Neuter interfectus
est, nam uterque ab alterō servābātur. 12. Utrī maiōrem
laudem dare dēbēmus?

205. 1. With two other cohorts, of one man alone, two
thousand feet. 2. In no town, without any difficulty, of
neither village. 3. The Suevi remain in one place not longer
than a year. 4. There were two roads ; one narrow and
difficult between the mountains and the river, the other,
much[2] easier, through the province. 5. Ariovistus had
seized the best part of all Gaul.

CHAPTER XXXIV

NUMERALS. READING LESSON

206. Learn the cardinals and the first twenty ordinals (467).
The hundreds and all the ordinals are declined like **bonus.**

EXERCISES

207. 1. Unīus annī. 2. Duārum cohortium. 3. Cum
decem equitibus. 4. Mīlitēs legiōnis nōnae et decimae. 5.

---

[1] **Sunt** goes with **laudātī** as well as with **pūnītī.**
[2] 179 and 180.

Prīmus centuriō cohortis prīmae   6. Quīntus decimus annus
post caedem legiōnum.

208.   READING LESSON

Post Orgetorīgis mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī angustōs
fīnīs relīquērunt.   Lātiōrēs et ferāciōrēs agrōs in aliīs cīvi-
tātibus petere cōnstituērunt.   Ubi iter facere parātī fuērunt,
oppida omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs
incendunt.   Partem frūmentī portant, partem dēlent.   Nihil
relinquere cupiēbant.   Nam omnēs puerī[1] mulierēsque[2] cum
mīlitibus iter faciēbant.   Omnium Helvētiōrum numerus erat
mīlium ducentōrum sexāgintā trium, Tulingōrum[3] mīlium[4]
trīgintā sex, Latobrīgōrum[5] quattuordecim, Rauracōrum
vīgintī trium, Boiōrum trīgintā duōrum.   Ad nōnāgintā
duo mīlia mīlitum arma habēbant.   Summa omnium fuērunt
ad mīlia trecenta sexāgintā octō.

209.   VOCABULARY

ad, with numerals, means
  towards, about, nearly.
centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion.*
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *desire.*
mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*
nihilō minus, *by nothing* (179,
  180) *less, nevertheless.*
parātus, -a, -um, *prepared.*
post, prep. with acc.,
  after.
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus,
  leave.
summa, -ae, f., *sum, to-
  tal.*

---

[1] **Puerī** often, as here, means children in general.

[2] The enclitic **-que,** *and* (16, 17, *c,*), joins two words or clauses of the
same construction and intimately connected in thought. When -que con-
nects two *words* only, it is always joined to the second. When it connects
two *phrases* or *clauses,* it is attached to the *first word* (except a preposition)
of the second clause or phrase.

[3] 112, *a, b.*

[4] The word **numerus** is understood here and in the following expressions.

[5] The word **mīlium** is understood.

CHAPTER XXXV

FOURTH DECLENSION: Stem in -ŭ-

210. *Paradigm*

	manus, f , *hand*	lacus, m., *lake*	cornū, n., *horn, wing* (of an army)		
Stem:	manu-	lacu-	cornu-		
Base:	man-	lac-	corn-		

	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS	
				MAS AND FLM	NEU
Nom.	manus	lacus	cornū	-us	-ū
Gen.	manūs	lacūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	manuī	lacuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
Acc.	manum	lacum	cornū	-um	-ū
Abl.	manū	lacū	cornū	-ū	-ū

	PLURAL				
Nom.	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	manuum	lacuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	manūs	lacūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	manibus	lacubus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

a. Most nouns of this declension are declined like **manus**. But **lacus, portus,** and a few others generally have -ubus in the dative and ablative plural.

b. **Domus** has some forms of the second declension, thus :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs, domī	domuum (domōrum)
Dat.	domuī, domō	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs, domūs
Abl.	domō, domū	domibus

c. domī is a locative form, meaning *at home* (352).

211. RULE OF GENDER. Most nouns in -us of the fourth declension are masculine; those in -ū are neuter. **Domus,** *house,* Īdūs (plur.), *the Ides,* **manus,** *hand,* and a few others are feminine.

212. Decline together **audāx exercitus, parva manus,** Īdūs proximae (plur. only), **dextrum cornū.**

213. VOCABULARY

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, entrance.*

adventus, -ūs, m., *coming, arrival.*

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began* (not found in the present system. 99, *b*).

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.*

equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

Īdūs, -uum, plu., f., *the Ides* (the 13th or 15th day of the month).

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack; force, fury.*

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*

manus, -ūs, f., *hand;* (in a military sense) *a band, force.*

mercātor, -ōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

peditātus, -ūs, m, *infantry.*

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left.*

EXERCISES

214. 1. Trēs portūs, fortiōrēs exercitūs, cum maiōre impetū. 2. Multōrum lacuum, inter magnōs lacūs, inter montīs sunt multī lacūs. 3. Agrōs et domōs sociōrum dēfendunt. 4. Puerī mulierēsque domī remanent. 5. Multae nāvēs in magnō portū erant. 6. Nūllus aditus erat ad portūs mercātōribus. 7. Cornua utraque exercitūs maximō impetū oppugnāta sunt. 8. Sinistrā ex parte flūminis parvae manūs peditātūs vidēbantur. 9. Dux celeriter ācrem impetum cum omnī equitātū fēcit. 10. Caesaris adventū mīlitēs multō audācius pugnāre coepērunt.

215. 1 Of the other port, with two armies, of the entire army. 2. From the left side the entrances of the harbor were very difficult. 3. The tenth legion will be stationed on the right wing of the army 4. The enemy were frightened by the quick coming of the cavalry. 5 They began to attack the outer harbor with greater fury.

CHAPTER XXXVI

FIFTH DECLENSION: Stem in -ē-

Accusative of Extent and Ablative of Time

216. *Paradigm*

	diēs, m., *day*	rēs, f., *thing*	plānitiēs, f., *plain*	
Stem:	diē-	rē-	plānitiē-	
Base:	di-	r-	plāniti-	
	SINGULAR			**TERMINATIONS**
Nom.	diēs	rēs	plānitiēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	reī	plānitiēī	-eī or -ēī
Dat.	diēī	reī	plānitiēī	-eī or -ēī
Acc.	diem	rem	plānitiem	-em
Abl.	diē	rē	plānitiē	-ē
	PLURAL			
Nom.	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum		-ērum
Dat.	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus
Acc.	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus

a. In the genitive and dative, e before ī is long when a vowel precedes, contrary to rule (13, *a*), as . diēī.

b. Only diēs and rēs are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have a nominative and accusative plural, as : aciēs, spēs.

c. Decline together magna rēs, longior diēs, triplex aciēs (given in 222).

217. RULE OF GENDER. *Nouns of the fifth declension are all feminine except* diēs, *day*, and merīdiēs, *mid-day* ; and even diēs, in the singular, is feminine when it means merely *time*.

218. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Decimō annō urbs capta est, *in the tenth year the city was taken.*

2. Patrem decem diēbus vidēbis, *you will see your father within ten days.*

In 1 annō, in the ablative, expresses the *time when.*

In 2 diēbus, in the ablative, expresses the time *within which.*

219. RULE. *Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative.*

220. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Rēx decem annōs rēxit, *the king has ruled ten years.*

2. Turris vīgintī pedēs alta est, *the tower is twenty feet high.*

In 1 annōs, in the accusative, expresses *duration of time.*

In 2 pedēs, in the accusative, expresses *extent of space.*

221. RULE. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

VOCABULARY

222.

aciēs, ēī, 1., *line* (of battle).

Aprīlis, -e, adj., *April, of April*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, arrange, marshal.*

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *bid, order.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

passus -ūs, m., *pace.* mīlle passūs, *mile*; duo mīlia passuum (202, c), *two miles.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, pitch* (camp).

triplex, -icis, adj., *triple.*

EXERCISES

223. 1. Posterō diē utraque castra mūnīvit. 2. Vīcus plānitiēī[1] magnae proximus erat. 3 Ūnō diē decem mīlia passuum iter fēcit. 4 In summō colle triplicem aciem īnstrūxit. 5. Superiōrem mīlitum aciem castra mūnīre iussit. 6. Prīmā lūce cōpiae in triplicī aciē prōcēdere coepērunt. 7. Quīnque diēs aciem tōtīus exercitūs īnstrūctam habuit.[2] 8. Ūnum annum domī remanēbimus. 9. Multōs diēs oppidum magnō impetū ā tōtō exercitū oppugnābitur. 10. Hostēs Īdibus Aprīlibus in alterā parte flūminis castra posuērunt. 11. Mēnsis Aprīlis trīgintā diēs habet; Īdūs fuērunt diēs tertius decimus.

224. 1. The two ships will remain near (ad) the entrances of the harbor many days. 2. Within six months the ships will leave the outer harbor. 3. On the third day of the first month we shall leave home. 4. The soldiers of the first line will defend the camp. 5. Between the mountain and the river you will see a great plain. 6. The plain is a mile wide and three miles long.

---

[1] The dative is often used, as here, depending on an adjective. A more definite rule will be given later. Such a dative is usually *placed before* the adjective.

[2] **habuit**, *had = kept.*

CHAPTER XXXVII

REVIEW OF COMPARISON

Reading Lesson

225. Review the comparison of adjectives and adverbs (168, 176, 177, 184, 192–194).

226. Compare the adjectives **cārus, longus, lātus, līber, pulcher, crēber, ācer, similis, crūdēlis, gravis, audāx, prūdēns, bonus, malus, magnus,** and the corresponding adverbs.

STORY OF DEUCALION AND PYRRHA

The Flood

227. Fābula ā poētā Rōmānō nārrātur. Omnibus in locīs terrae hominēs ōlim pessimī crūdēlissimīque fuērunt. Itaque Iuppiter tōtum genus hūmānum gravissimā poenā adficere cōnstituit. Ex omnī caelō crēberrimōs imbrīs mīsit. Neptūnus quoque frātrem libentissimē iuvat. Mox terra altō marī simillima erat. Mōns Parnāsus sōlus aquā nōn tēctus erat. Deucaliōn et Pyrrha in Parnāsō manent. Suprā agrōs arātōs parvā in rate nāvigant et piscem summā in ulmō dēprēndunt. Iuppiter iam ūnum virum ex[1] multīs mīlibus et ūnam mulierem vīdit atque īram dēposuit. Nūlla mora est. Quam celerrimē Neptūnus nūbīs fugāvit et flūmina mariaque revocāvit. Iam terra vidētur et maria multō angustiōrēs fīnīs habent.

---

[1] After a cardinal number, like **ūnus, ex** with the ablative is used instead of the partitive genitive (187).

228.   SPECIAL VOCABULARY

arbor, -oris f., *a tree*

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens*.

dēpōnō [dē + pōnō] -ere, -po suī, -positus, *lay aside*

dēprēndō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *catch*.

Deucaliōn, ōnis, m., *Deucalion*.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *put to flight, scatter*.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *human*

īra, -ae, f., *wrath, anger*.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*, the ruler of gods and men.

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *aid, help*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sail, go* or *ride* (by water).

Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune*, brother of Jupiter, and ruler of the sea

Parnāsus, -ī, m., *Parnassus*, a mountain in Greece.

piscis, -is, m., *fish*.

Pyrrha, -ae, f., *Pyrrha*, wife of Deucalion.

ratis, -is, f., *a raft*.

revocō [re + vocō], -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call back, recall, revoke*.

suprā, prep. with acc., *above, over*.

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*.

ulmus, -ī, f., *an elm tree*.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

REVIEW OF ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS, NUMERALS, ETC.

Reading Lesson

229. Review sections 200, 202, 206, 210, 216.

STORY OF DEUCALION AND PYRRHA (*continued*)

Restoration of the Human Race

230. Deucaliōn, miserior et sōlitūdine vehementissimē mōtus, in templum vēnit atque auxilium deōrum cupidissimē rogāvit. Deucaliōne nūllus melior vir fuit. Themis, dea iūstissima prūdentissimaque, tum ōrācula tenēbat atque precibus Deucaliōnis graviter mōta respōnsum dedit : *genus hūmānum restitūtum erit, sī ossa magnae parentis post*[1] *ter-*

[1] **Post,** *after = behind.*

gum tacētis. Diū tacitī et perterritī manēbant, quod Pyrrha ossa parentis movēre timēbat. Tandem Deucaliōn dīcit: "magna parēns terra est Lapidēs in corpore terrae ossa dīcuntur;[1] iacere lapidēs post terga iubēmur." Iussōs lapidēs celeriter post terga mittunt. Mox lapidēs virī manibus missī fōrmam hominibus[2] simillimam sūmere vidēbantur. Lapidēs ā fēminā missī fēminae sunt. Sīc deī brevī tempore genus hūmānum restituērunt.

231.   SPECIAL VOCABULARY

fēmina, -ae, f, *female, woman.*

fōrma, -ae, f., *form.*

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle, prophecy.*

os, ossis, n., *bone.*

prex, precis, f., (used mostly in plural) *prayer, entreaty.*

respōnsum, -ī, n, *reply, response.*

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *restore.*

sī, conj., *if.*

sīc, adv., *so, thus, in this manner.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, f., *solitude, loneliness.*

tacitus, -a, -um, *silent.*

tandem, adv, *at length, at last.*

tergum, -ī, n., *back.*

Themis, -idis, f., *Themis,* goddess of justice and prophecy.

[1] **dīcuntur,** *are said = are called.*   [2] See 223, foot-note 1.
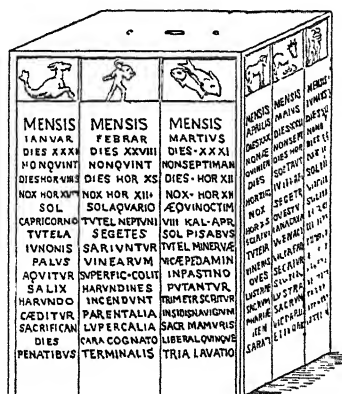
FARMER'S CALENDAR

SUOVETAURILIA

CHAPTER XXXIX

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

232. The relative pronoun **quī**, *who, which, that.*

Paradigm

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU	
SINGULAR				
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	*who, which, that*
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	*whose, of whom, of which*
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	*to or for whom, which*
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	*whom, which, that*
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	*by, with, etc., whom, which*
PLURAL				
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	*who, which, that*
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	*whose, of whom, of which*
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to or for whom, which*
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	*whom, which, that*
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*by, with, etc., whom, which*

233. The interrogative pronoun quis, *who? which? what?*

Paradigm

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	
SINGULAR				
Nom.	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	*who? which? what?*
Gen.	cuius	(cuius)	cuius	*whose?*
Dat.	cui	(cui)	cui	*to* or *for whom?* etc.
Acc.	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	*whom? which? what?*
Abl.	quō	(quā)	quō	*by, with,* etc., *whom? which? what?*
PLURAL				
Nom.	quī	quae	quae	*who? which? what?*
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	*whose?*
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*to* or *for whom?* etc.
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	*whom? which? what?*
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	*by, with,* etc., *whom? which? what?*

a. The endings of these pronouns are very nearly like those of the adjectives given in 200.

b. The interrogative forms given in parentheses are used only as adjectives, the other forms either substantively or adjectively, thus:

SUBSTANTIVE

1. Quis vocat? *who is calling?*
2. Quid vidēs? *what do you see?*

ADJECTIVE

1. Quī homō vocat? *what man calls?*
2. Quod templum vidēs? *what temple do you see?*

234. Decline together quī mīles, quae mulier, quod animal.

235.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Mīles, quem vidēs, volnerātus est, *the soldier, whom you see, has been wounded*

2. Urbēs, quās vidēs, pulchrae sunt, *the cities, which you see, are beautiful.*

3. Oppidum, quod vidēs, magnum est, *the town, which you see, is large*

4. Mīlitēs, ā quibus urbs dēfēnsa est, laudāmus; *the soldiers, by whom the city has been defended, we praise.*

5. Equus, cui frūmentum dās, est validum animal, *the horse, to which you give grain, is a strong animal.*

a. The relative pronoun refers to some word in another clause, called the antecedent, and agrees with that antecedent in gender and number. But its case may be different, for it is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands. Thus in 1, 2, 3 the antecedents, **mīles, urbēs,** and **oppidum,** are in the nominative case, and the relatives, **quem, quās,** and **quod,** which agree in number and gender with the antecedents, are objects of **vidēs,** and are therefore in the accusative. In 4 the antecedent **mīlitēs** is accusative, the object of **laudāmus,** and the relative **quibus** is the ablative of agent with **ā.** In 5 **equus** is subject of **est,** and **cui** is dative, the indirect object of **dās.**

236. RULE. *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number.*

NOTE. — The cases of the relative are governed by the same rules by which the cases of nouns are governed.

237.   VOCABULARY

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy.*

conloquium, -ī, n., *conference.*

continenter, adv., *continually.*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *manage, do, wage* (war).

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *am born* (no active voice).

ubi, rel. or interrog. adv., *where.*

EXERCISES

238. 1. Quis arcem dēfendit ? 2. Ā quō arx dēfēnsa est ?
3. Custōdēs, quī urbem in perīculō nōn dēfendēbant, pūnīrī
dēbent. 4. Quae arma habētis ? 5. Gladiōs et pīla habē-
mus, quibus oppidum dēfendēmus. 6. Ubi habitās ? In
urbe, ubi pater nātus est, habitō. 7. Plānitiēs erat magna,
ad quam ducēs ad conloquium vēnērunt. 8. Cuius equitēs
lapidēs conicere coepērunt ? 9. Lapidēs ab Ariovistī equi-
tibus, quī ab conloquiō ducentīs passibus[1] cōnstitūtī erant,
coniciēbantur. 10. Orgetorīx ab Helvētiīs coniūrātiōne,[2]
quam fēcerat, culpātus est. 11. Belgae proximī sunt Ger-
mānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum[3] continenter
bellum gerunt. 12. Rōmānī celeritāte[4] superābant Ger-
mānōs, quī magnitūdine corporum erant maiōrēs.

239. 1. What did you do ? 2. By whom will the city be
defended ? 3. In what city do you live ? 4. What town was
destroyed ? 5. Whose black horse are you leading ? 6. I
am leading the horse of a farmer, who lives in the next
town. 7. The weapons, which the poor soldiers carried,
were heavy. 8. The keeper, by whose watchfulness the
citadel was saved, will be praised for his bravery.[2] 9. The
girls, whose mother was born in America,[5] are now in
Europe.[6]

---

[1] 180.　　　　　　　　　　　　　[2] 141.
[3] **cum**, when used with a relative pronoun, is enclitic, as: **quibuscum**,
with whom. See 16.
[4] 158.　　　[5] 112, *b*.　　　[6] *Europe* = **Eurōpa**.

CIRCUS ROMANUS

CHAPTER XL

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

Possessive Adjectives

240. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns : ego, tū, suī.

	SINGULAR	
Nom.	ego, *I*	tū, *thou* or *you*
Gen.	meī, *of me*	tuī, *of you*
Dat.	mihi, *to* or *for me*	tibi, *to* or *for you*
Acc.	mē, *me*	tē, *you*
Abl.	mē, *(by,* etc *) me*	tē, *(by,* etc.) *you*
	PLURAL	
Nom.	nōs, *we*	vōs, *you*
Gen.	nostrum. nostrī, *of us*	vestrum, vestrī, *of you*
Dat.	nōbīs, *to* or *for us*	vōbīs, *to* or *for you*
Acc.	nōs, *us*	vōs, *you*
Abl.	nōbīs, *(by,* etc.) *us*	vōbīs, *(by,* etc *) you*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	——	——
Gen.	suī. *of himself, herself, itself*	suī, *of themselves*
Dat.	sibi. *to* or *for himself, herself,* etc.	sibi, *to* or *for themselves*
Acc.	sē, sēsē, *himself, herself, itself*	sē, sēsē, *themselves*
Abl.	sē, sēsē. *(by,* etc.) *himself, herself, itself*	sē, sēsē, *(by,* etc.) *themselves*

241. From the genitive of the personal and reflexive pronouns *possessive adjectives* are formed, thus :

Pronoun	Genitive	Possessive Adjective
ego, *I*	meī	meus, mea, meum, *my, mine*
tū, *thou* or *you*	tuī	tuus, tua, tuum, *thy* or *your*
nōs, *we*	nostrum	noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*
vōs, *you*	vestrum	vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*
—— *self*	suī	suus, sua, suum, *his* (own), *her* (own), *its* (own), *their* (own).

a. The possessive adjectives are declined like bonus, -a, -um, except that the vocative singular masculine of meus is mī, as : mī fīlī (44, *c*), *my son.*

b. cum, when used with the personal or reflexive pronouns, is enclitic, as : mēcum, *with me.*   See 16 and 239, note 3.

c. The reflexive pronoun sē and its adjective suus refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand, as : puer sē culpat, *the boy blames himself,* and puer suum frātrem laudat, *the boy praises his* (own) *brother.*

d. The personal pronouns are needed as subject only to express emphasis or contrast.   Ordinarily the personal endings of the verb are sufficient to indicate the person.

242.   VOCABULARY

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approve, commend.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, preserve.*

dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *esteem.*

dum, conj., *as long as, while, until.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *protection, guard.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take back, receive*: sē recipere (to take one's self back), *retreat, withdraw, return.*

satis, adv., *enough, sufficient, sufficiently.*

soror, -ōris, f., *sister*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *withstand, sustain one's self, hold out.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

EXERCISES

243. 1. Ego sum miles, tū es nauta   2. Tū es fortis,
mī puer, et tē virtūte comprobō. 3. Tū, quī ā patre tuō
comprobātus es, ā mē quoque laudāberis 4. Quis tēcum
vēnit? Mea māter et sorōrēs mēcum vēnērunt. 5. Vōs,
quī urbem cōnsiliīs vestrīs cōnservāvistis, comprobāmus.
6. Nam vōbīscum tūtī erimus, sine vōbīs nūlla salūs erit.
7. Sed nōbīs erit satis praesidī, dum vōs nōbīscum eritis.
8. Vestram virtūtem, fortēs custōdēs, summā cum laude
comprobō. 9 Vestra virtūs ā nōbīs et ab omnibus com-
probātur. 10. Nostrī[1] oppidum vehementissimē oppug-
nāvērunt. 11. Hostēs nōn diūtius nostrōs impetūs sus-
tinuērunt. 12 Alterī[2] in proximum oppidum, alterī[2] ad
carrōs sē recipiēbant. 13. Incolae omnia sēcum sua[1] por-
tābant.

244. 1. If you will come, I will come. 2. Who will
come with you? 3. Without you your friends will not
come. 4. Who gave you the book which you have with
you? 5. The book which you see was given to me by my
brother. 6. A man who does not esteem himself is not
esteemed by others. 7. The soldier, who bravely defended
his own country, was commended by all. 8. Our friends
who love us ought to be esteemed by us.

---

[1] Adjectives and participles are often used substantively, without any noun,
when the sense is clear without it, as: **omnēs,** *all = all men, everybody;*
armātī, *armed = armed men;* **nostrī,** *ours = our men;* **sua,** *their own =
their possessions,* etc.

[2] **Alterī** . . **alterī,** *some . . . the others* (201, *a*)

CHAPTER XLI

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: is, īdem

245.   is, ea, id, *he, she, it ; this*

	MAS	FEM	NEU		
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	is	ea	id	*he, she, it*	Sometimes the un-
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	*his, her, its*	emphatic *this, that*
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	*to* or *for him, her, it*	(just mentioned)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	*him, her, it*	(248, 3), or *the, a,*
Abl	eō	eā	eō	*by, with,* etc., *him,*	*one,* etc , followed
				her, it	by a relative (248,
					4 and 5).
			PLURAL		
Nom.	eī	eae	ea	*they*	
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	*their*	Sometimes *these*
Dat.	eīs	eīs	eīs	*to* or *for them*	(just mentioned) or
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	*them*	*those, the,* etc , fol-
Abl.	eīs	eīs	eīs	*by, with,* etc., *them*	lowed by a rela-
					tive

a. The nominative plural masculine is sometimes iī ; the dative and ablative plural iīs.

246.   īdem, *the same*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MAS	FEM	NEU	MAS	FEM	NEU
īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

a. The nominative plural masculine is sometimes īdem ; the dative and ablative plural īsdem or iīsdem.

b. Īdem is declined like is with -dem added. In the accusative singular and genitive plural m becomes n before d

247. Decline together is vir, ea legiō. id bellum.

248.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1 { Cōnsulem interfēcit et eius exercitum cēpit.
   { *He killed the consul and captured his army.*

2 { Duae nāvēs in portū sunt   Vīdistīne eās?
   { *There are two ships in the harbor. Have you seen*
   {   *them?*

3 { Oppidum erat magnum. In eō oppidō erat arx.
   { *There was a large town. In this* (or *that*) *town was*
   {   *a citadel.*

4 { Is quī patriam suam dēfendit comprobātur.
   { *He who defends his country is commended.*

5 { Cum eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, vēnit.
   { *He came with the legion which he had with him.*

a. The Latin has no personal pronoun of the third person. See 240. But is very commonly takes its place, as eius in 1 and eās in 2.

b. When is (ea, id) is used as a personal pronoun, it means *he, she, it,* etc., as in 1 and 2 ; but when used as a demonstrative adjective, as in 3, it means *this* or *that.*

c. In 1, 2, 3, the forms of is all refer to something just mentioned ; in 4 and 5 is and ea are used merely to introduce the following relatives. Notice the translation in 4 and 5, also the meanings given in 245.

d. But when *he* or *his* refers to the subject, the proper form of sē or suus must be used, as suam in 4 and sē in 5. Compare eius in 1, and see 241, *c.*

249. VOCABULARY

aegrē (compare aeger), *feebly, with difficulty.*

ante, adv., or prep. with acc., *before.*

cīvis, -is, m. or f., *citizen.*

condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *conduct, lead, bring together.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *guard, protect.*

item, adv., *likewise.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hill.*

EXERCISES

250. 1. Casticus rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupāvit, quod pater ante eum habuerat. 2. Itemque Dumnorīx, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat, idem fēcit. 3. Orgetorīx omnīs clientīs suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, ad eundem locum condūxit; per eōs sē cōnservāvit. 4. Helvētiī in Haeduōrum fīnīs suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et eōrum agrōs vāstābant. 5. Caesar ūnō diē fēcit idem iter, quod Helvētiī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. 6. Hostēs, Caesaris adventū commōtī, ab eō locō ubi tum erant sē recipiēbant. 7. Itaque eōdem tempore Caesar sua castra mōvit. 8. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus. 9. Legiōnem passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit.

251. 1. In the same month, of same day, by the same man. 2. His, their, whose, by whom? 3. To him, to whom, he who, that which. 4. The consul was slain by the same man by whom his father had been killed. 5. He who does not guard his friends will not be esteemed by them. 6. Those by whom we are guarded we ought to esteem. 7. We esteem those whose friendship is dear to us.

CHAPTER XLII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS: hĭc, ille, iste, ipse

252.　hĭc, *this* ; or (less often) *he, she, it*, etc.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM	NEU	MAS	FEM	NEU
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hŏc [1]	hī	hae	haec
Gen	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

253.　　ille, *that* ; or *he, she, it*, etc.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS	FEM	NEU.	MAS	FEM	NEU.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

254. *a.* **Ille** may be used either substantively or adjectively. As a demonstrative adjective **ille** generally means *that* in contrast to *this* (hīc), as: ille **vir**, *that man* ; illa **urbs**, *that city* ; hīc **vir**, *this man* ; haec **urbs**, *this city*. When hīc and ille are contrasted with each other, they may sometimes be translated *the one . . . the other*, or *the former . . . the latter*, etc., as: in eādem cīvitāte fuērunt duo virī ; ille ōrātor, hīc mīles fortis fuit, *in the same state were two men; the one* (or *the former*) *was an orator, the other* (or *the latter*) *was a brave soldier.*

---

[1] The vowels in **hĭc** and **hŏc**, though sometimes short, are more commonly long, and will be so written in the exercises of this book.

b. When contrasted with the personal pronouns or with nouns, ille is usually translated simply *he, she, it,* etc., like is, except that is refers back to the person or thing just mentioned without contrast (see 248, 1, 2, 3), while ille always implies a contrast or change of subject, and is therefore generally emphatic, as : frātrem meum nōn saepe videō, nam ille in Eurōpā est, sed ego domī maneō, *my brother I do not often see, for he is in Europe, but I am staying at home.*

255. iste, ista, istud, *that*

a. Iste is declined just like ille. It is used of that which has some relation to the person addressed, as estne iste liber tuus, *is that book* (which you have) *yours ?*

256. ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self*

a. Ipse is an intensive pronoun used to add emphasis to some noun, or pronoun, with which it agrees like an adjective, as : ipse vir, *the man himself,* tū ipse, *you yourself.*

b. Ipse may sometimes be translated *very, merely,* etc., as : ipse rūmor bellī urbem terruit, *the rumor itself* (the *very* rumor) (the *mere* rumor) *of war alarmed the city.*

NOTE. — The intensive pronoun ipse, *self,* must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive sē, *self,* which is used in some part of the predicate to refer back to the subject, as : ipse vir dīxit, *the man himself spoke* ; but vir sē dēfendit, *the man defended himself.* Compare 241, *c,* with *a* above.

257. Decline together haec rēs, ille mīles, istud bellum, ipse magister.

258. VOCABULARY

grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, gratifying.*

invidia, -ae, f., *envy, greed.*

nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give back, give up, return.*

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

EXERCISES

259. 1. In hāc urbe, illius urbis, huic legiōnī, istīus librī. 2. Ab ipsō duce, hae mulierēs ipsae et līberī eārum. 3. Ista, mī fīlī, est invidia, sī aliīs nōn dās id quod tū ipse nōn cupis. 4. Hae legiōnēs in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs pugnābant. 5. Ipse Ariovistus magnam adrogantiam sibi sūmpserat. 6. Dīviciācus et Dumnorīx erant frātrēs ; ille ab omnibus dīligēbātur, hic culpābātur. 7. Hī sunt eīdem Germānī, quibuscum Helvētiī saepe nōn sōlum in suīs [1] sed etiam in illōrum [2] fīnibus bellum gessērunt. 8. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. 9 Hanc nōn sōlum nostrī sed etiam illī [2] vītābant. 10. Hōs obsidēs, quōs ego habeō, reddam, sī illae cīvitātēs et sociī eōrum [3] lēgātōs, quōs illī [2] habent, mihi reddent.

260. 1 In that town, by this leader, the boy himself and his friend. 2. Whose is that book, which you have with you ? 3. Those men are in arms, these women remain at home [4] 4. To us this victory is more pleasing than to them. 5. This boy is more active than his brother. 6 For that which the brother himself did in two days [5] he will do in one day

[1] 248, *d*.   [2] 254, *b*   [3] 248, 1 and *a*   [4] 210, *c*.   [5] 219
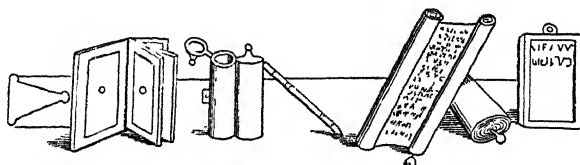
ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

CHAPTER XLIII

REVIEW OF PRONOUNS

Reading Lesson

261. Decline quis and quī (232, 233), ego, tū, sē (240). Name the five possessive adjectives, and tell from their derivation (241) what they each mean. How do tuus and vester differ in meaning? Illustrate by a short sentence in Latin when to use eius and when suus for *his*. Decline is and īdem. Translate is quī, īdem homō, idem quod iste vir fēcit hīc puer faciet. Decline hīc, ille, iste, ipse. How does ipse differ in use and meaning from sē? What is the meaning of is as an adjective? as a pronoun? Is ille or is the more emphatic? Which of the two occurs more frequently in the nominative as a pronoun? Ans. ille, for *no personal* pronoun is usually required in the nominative except for contrast or change of subject (254, *b*). What is the meaning of hīc and ille when contrasted with each other? When should iste be used for *that*? Ask in Latin: *Is that book yours ?* Answer in Latin.

THE GOLDEN TOUCH OF MIDAS

262. Bacchus[1] ōlim Midae, rēgī Phrygiae, quī eī grātum fēcerat,[2] arbitrium mūneris dedit. Ille autem[3] dīxit: "mihi grātissimum mūnus erit, sī id quod meō corpore tetigerō in aurum vertētur." Cui deus, maestus quod meliōra nōn petierat, dīxit: "tū quī istud mūnus petīstī[4] nōn prūdenter petīstī." Sed mūnus deī nōn revocātum est. Sine morā Midās saxum in dextram manum sūmit. Statim saxum est

---

[1] Bacchus, the god of wine.

[2] grātum faciō = *I do a favor*.

[3] autem = *but*, used for contrast or change of subject, and always placed after one or two words of a sentence.

[4] Contract form for petiistī.

māssa aurī. Arborēs ac flōrēs extrēmīs[1] digitīs tangit.
Arborēs flōrēsque radiāre videntur.   Tum rēx superbissimē
in rēgiam sē recēpit   Omnia quae tangit sunt aurea.
Etiam cibus quem rēx ōre tetigerat in māssam aurī vertē-
bātur   Vīnum quoque, quod ē pōculō fundere coeperat, est
aureum flūmen.[2]   Omnium hominum rēx iam miserrimus
fuit.   Tandem famē sitīque victus, mūnus quod ipse peti-
erat effugere cupiēbat.   Iterum deī auxilium petiit.   Huic[3]
ille[4] respōnsum dedit : "sī ad flūmen Pactōlum veniēs et
corpus tuum in eius aquā mergēs, vīs aurea[5] dē[6] tuō cor-
pore in flūmen cēdet." Rēx ea quae iussus est fēcit, atque
ex eō tempore Pactōlus aureīs harēnīs fluere dīcitur.

263.   SPECIAL VOCABULARY

arbitrium, -ī. n., *choice, deci-
   sion.*
aureus, -a, -um, *golden, of gold.*
aurum, -ī, n., *gold*
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *go
   from, pass from.*
cibus, -ī, m., *food*
digitus, -ī, m., *finger*
effugiō, -ere, effūgī, effugitūrus,
   escape.
famēs, -is, f., *hunger.*
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour.*
harēna, -ae, f., *sand.*
iterum, adv., *again.*
maestus, -a, -um, *sad*
māssa, -ae, f., *mass.*

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, *dip,
   plunge, immerse.*
Midās, -ae, m., *Midas.*
mūnus, -eris, n, *gift, reward,
   service.*
ōs, ōris, n, *mouth*
Pactōlus, -ī, m., *Pactolus,* a river
   of Lydia
pōculum, -ī, n, *a cup.*
radiō, -āre, ——, ——, *gleam,
   glitter.*
rēgia, -ae, f., *royal palace.*
sitis, -is, f., *thirst*
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch.*
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *turn,
   change.*

---

[1] *extreme = extremities of, ends of, tips of,* etc.   [2] *stream.*

[3] *to him =* Midas

[4] *he* (emphatic) = Bacchus.

[5] *force of gold = the power to turn things to gold*   [6] *from.*

CHAPTER XLIV

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES COMPOUND VERBS

264.   Illustrative Examples

1. **Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs**, *the Belgae are nearest* (next) *to the Germans.*
2. **Mihi voluntās tua est grāta**, *your good-will is pleasing to me.*

RULE. *Adjectives meaning near, also fit, friendly, pleasing, like, and their opposites, take the dative.*

265.   VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, *certain.*

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, meet*

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxūrus. *flow.*

Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare.*

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *extend.*

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventū- **rus,** *come through*; (with **ad**) *reach, arrive at.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *prohibit, stop.*

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus. *tear down, destroy.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *Rhone.*

voluntās, -ātis, f., *good-will, willingness, consent*

READING LESSON

266. Inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus [1] Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Hōc ponte Helvētiī cōpiās suās trāns flūmen trādūcere cupīvērunt. Certā diē ad rīpam eius flūminis omnēs convenīre parāvērunt. Caesarī ubi haec rēs nūntiāta est, eōs per vim prohibēre cōnstituit. Itaque quam celerrimē omnīs mīlitēs prōvinciae tōtīus in ūnum locum con-

---

[1] The word **fīnibus** is dative after **proximum**, and **Genava** is subject.

dūcit. Maximīs itineribus ex urbe mātūrat et ad Genavam pervenit. Pontem quī ad Genavam erat iubet rescindī.

Compound Verbs

267. Verbs are often compounded with prepositions, thus :

ā-mittō, *send away*

ad-mittō, *send to, admit.*

ē-mittō, *send out, emit*

im-mittō, *send in, let in.*

inter-mittō, *intermit, interrupt.*

prae-mittō, *send ahead.*

re-mittō, *send back.*

trāns-mittō, *send across.*

a. The final consonant of a preposition is often changed when it comes before a different consonant, thus :

in + mittō becomes **immittō** ; ad + tribuō becomes **attribuō**.

The change of a consonant so as to make it like the one that follows it is called *assimilation.*

b. The vowel **a** or **e** in the stem of a word often becomes **i** in composition, thus :

ad + capiō becomes **accipiō** , ex + faciō becomes **efficiō** , con + teneō becomes **contineō**.

CHAPTER XLV

DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

READING LESSON

268. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Sine ūllō maleficiō eius voluntāte iter per prōvinciam facere cupīvērunt. Nam aliud iter habēbant nūllum Dē hāc rē paucōs diēs Caesar dēlīberāvit, et lēgātōs certā diē sē convenīre iussit.

Intereā eius mīlitēs, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū ad montem mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum altissimum perdūcunt. Hunc fīrmissimō praesidiō mūnīrī iussit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, iter iīs per prōvinciam dare recūsāvit. Itaque Helvētiī per vim iter facere temptāvērunt. Sed, mīlitum tēlīs repulsī atque eā spē dēiectī, hōc itinere nōn prōcēdēbant.

269. VOCABULARY

certior factus est, *was made more certain = was informed*

dē, prep. with abl, *about, concerning, with reference to; from, down from.*

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *cast down*; dēiectus. *disappointed.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deliberate.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile.*

paucī, -ae, -a, plu., *few.*

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, run* (a wall).

repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel*

spēs, -eī, f., *hope.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, attempt.*

270. Derivative Nouns and Adjectives

1. The suffix -tor (or -sor, if the participle ends in -sus) added to roots or verb-stems forms nouns denoting agent or doer.

a. As the suffix -tor is added to the same stem and in the same way as the suffix -tus which forms the perfect participle, nouns of agency may be easily formed by merely changing the final -us of the perfect participle to -or, thus :

Verb	Participle	Noun
vincō, *conquer* ;	victus ;	victor, *conqueror.*
dēfendō, *defend* ;	dēfēnsus ;	dēfēnsor, *defender.*

Form nouns from amō, imperō, ōrō, doceō, moneō, etc.

2. The suffixes -tus and -tiō (or -sus and -siō) added to verb-stems form nouns denoting action, as :

Verb	Participle	Noun
canō, *sing*;	cantus;	cantus, *singing*
dēfendō, *defend*;	dēfēnsus;	dēfēnsiō, *defense.*
mūniō, *fortify*;	mūnītus;	mūnītiō, *fortification.*
ōrō, *speak, plead*;	ōrātus,	ōrātiō, *speech, oration.*

3. From verb-stems many adjectives are formed by the suffixes -āx and -bilis or -ilis, as :

Verbs	Adjectives
pugnō, *fight*;	pugnāx, *pugnacious, inclined to fight.*
audeō, *dare*;	audāx, *audacious, bold, daring.*
crēdō, *believe*;	crēdibilis, *credible, believable.*
faciō, *do*;	facilis, *easy to do, easy.*

4. From nouns many adjectives are formed by the suffixes -eus and -ālis, -ēlis, -īlis, as :

Nouns	Adjectives
ignis, *fire*;	igneus, *fiery, igneous.*
aurum, *gold*;	aureus, *golden.*
rēx, *king*;	rēgālis, *kingly, regal.*
mors, *death*;	mortālis, *mortal.*
fidēs, *faith*;	fidēlis, *faithful.*
hostis, *enemy*;	hostīlis, *hostile.*

5. From adjectives many abstract nouns are formed by the suffixes -ia or -tia; also many with -tās and -tūdō, as :

Adjectives	Nouns
audāx, *bold*;	audācia, *boldness, audacity.*
prūdēns, *prudent*;	prūdentia, *prudence, foresight.*
amīcus, *friendly*;	amīcitia, *friendship.*
līber, *free*;	lībertās, *liberty.*
magnus, *great*;	magnitūdō, *greatness, magnitude.*

Form nouns in -tūdō from **longus, lātus, altus, multus, fortis**, etc.

CHAPTER XLVI

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Active Voice (*all conjugations*)

Subjunctive of Purpose

271.   *Paradigm*

Present

SINGULAR

I may praise, advise, rule, take, hear, be.

laudem	moneam	regam	capiam	audiam	sim
laudēs	moneās	regās	capiās	audiās	sīs
laudet	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat	sit

PLURAL

laudēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus	sīmus
laudētis	moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis	sītis
laudent	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant	sint

Imperfect

SINGULAR

I might praise, advise, rule, take, hear, be.

laudārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audīrem	essem
laudārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audīrēs	essēs
laudāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audīret	esset

PLURAL

laudārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus	essēmus
laudārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audīrētis	essētis
laudārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audīrent	essent

Perfect

SINGULAR

I have praised, advised, ruled, taken, heard, been

laudāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	cēperim	audīverim	fuerim
laudāveris	monueris	rēxeris	cēperis	audīveris	fueris
laudāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	cēperit	audīverit	fuerit

laudāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus	fuerimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis	fueritis
laudāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	cēperint	audīverint	fuerint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR

I had praised, advised, ruled, taken, heard, been.

laudāvissem	monuissem	rēxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem	fuissem
laudāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs	fuissēs
laudāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	cēpisset	audīvisset	fuisset

PLURAL

laudāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus	fuissēmus
laudāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis	fuissētis
laudāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	cēpissent	audīvissent	fuissent

a. The subjunctive present in all conjugations except the first has the mood vowel -ā- before the personal endings (70). In the first conjugation, where the indicative has -ā-, the subjunctive has -ē-. Sum and a few other irregular verbs have -ī-.

b. The imperfect subjunctive of all Latin verbs of whatever conjugation may be formed by simply adding the personal endings to the present infinitive, thus : esse + m = essem ; laudāre + m = laudārem, etc.

c. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctives are formed from the perfect stem by the suffixes -eri- and -isse-, which with the personal endings give -erim and -issem. In form the perfect subjunctive, except in the first person singular, is just like the future perfect indicative.

d. The pluperfect subjunctive may also be formed directly by adding the personal endings to the perfect infinitive, thus : fuisse + m = fuissem ; laudāvisse + m = laudāvissem, etc.

e. The meanings given above to the different tenses are common, but not the only, meanings of these tenses. The other

meanings are due to their relation to other parts of the sentence in which they occur, and can be learned only by practice.

272.   Subjunctive of Purpose

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Venit ut videat, *he comes that he may see* (*to see, in order to see*), etc.

2. Mātūrāvit nē hostēs urbem dēlērent, *he made haste that the enemy might not destroy the city.*

273. RULE. *The subjunctive with* ut, *or negative* nē, *is used to express purpose.*

274.   VOCABULARY

cum, conj, *when, since, though.*
tamen, conj, *yet, nevertheless.*
ut, conj., *that, in order that.*
nē, conj, *that not, lest.*
ita, adv., *so, in such a way.*

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*
cōn-scrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write down, enlist, enroll.*

EXERCISES

275. 1. Arma capiunt ut hostīs repellant. 2. Mātūrāvērunt ut pontem dēlērent. 3. Vēnistīne ut urbem videās? 4. Nōnne mātūrābitis ut castra custōdiātis? 5. Vēnimus ut tē laudēmus. 6. Cum[1] hostīs reppulisset, cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. 7. Cum[2] nostrī oppidum nōn cēperint, tamen virtūte eōs laudāmus. 8. Cum[3] hās rēs ita cōnstitueritis, prōcēdēmus. 9 Caesar, cum[1] in citeriōrem Galliam vēnisset, dē Belgārum coniūrātiōne audīvit. 10. Atque in eō locō remānsit dum legiōnēs, quās cōnscrīpserat, convenīrent. 11. Domī manēbō dum ad mē dē hīs rēbus scrībās.

---

[1] *When.*   [2] *Although.*   [3] *Since.*

276. 1. This man has come that he may see our city.
2. They came that they might praise you. 3. He will wait
in this city till you (may) come. 4. Though [1] our men were
brave, they did not conquer. 5. When [1] Cæsar had heard
about this conspiracy, he enrolled two new legions. 6.
Since [1] you have written to me, I will come to the city to
see you (cf 272, 1).

CHAPTER XLVII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Its General Character

Subjunctive with cum, and Subjunctive of Result

277. *a* The indicative mood states a thing as a fact,
as : **mīles erat fortis,** *the soldier was brave*; **mīles forti-
ter pugnāverat,** *the soldier had fought bravely* ; **mīles for-
titer pugnābit,** *the soldier will fight bravely,* etc. The
subjunctive states what *may be, would be, had been,* or
would have been, etc., under certain circumstances, as :
mīles sit fortis, *the soldier may be brave* ; **sī mīles fuisset
fortis, fortius pugnāvisset,** *if the soldier had been brave,
he would have fought more bravely* ; **mīles, cum fortiter
pugnāvisset, victus est,** *the soldier, though he had fought
bravely, was conquered.*

b. The subjunctive is more generally used in dependent
clauses, where the English sometimes uses the indicative
and sometimes *may, might, should, would,* etc., or even the
infinitive. In translation, therefore, substitute for the sub-
junctive the form that will best express the sense. More
definite rules will be given as required.

---

[1] **Cum,** to be followed by the subjunctive.

278.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1 Hostēs, cum equitēs nōn habērent, nōn effūgērunt, *the enemy did not escape, since they had no cavalry.*

2. Caesar hostīs, cum oppida eōrum expugnāsset, nōn cēpit, *Cæsar did not capture the enemy, though he had taken their towns.*

3. Mīlitēs, cum Caesar vēnisset, fortius pugnāre coepē- runt, *the soldiers, when Cæsar came, began to fight more boldly.*

4 Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, erant duae factiōnēs, *when Cæsar came into Gaul, there were two factions.*

a. Cum meaning *since* is *causal*; meaning *though* (or *although*) is *concessive*; meaning *when* is *temporal.*

279. RULE. 1. Cum *causal or concessive always takes the subjunctive.*

2. Cum *temporal takes the subjunctive when it denotes the circumstances or occasion for some other act*

a. When cum denotes simply the time, and not the circum- stances or occasion for some other act, it takes the indicative as in 4 above. Here Cæsar's coming had nothing to do with the factions in Gaul, while in 3 Cæsar's coming was the occa- sion under which the soldiers were encouraged to fight more bravely. The past tenses of the indicative with cum are not very frequent.

b. The meaning and uses of cum may be summarized thus :

cum, meaning *since,* is *causal* with the subjunctive.

cum, meaning *though,* is *concessive* with the subjunctive.

cum, meaning *when,* is $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{either } \textit{purely temporal} \text{ with the indicative} \\ \text{or } \textit{circumstantial} \text{ with the subjunctive.}\end{array}\right.$

Subjunctive of Result

280. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Mīles tam fortiter pugnāvit ut mortem vītāret, *the soldier fought so bravely that he escaped death.*

2. Mīles ita perterritus erat ut sē nōn dēfenderet, *the soldier was so frightened that he did not defend himself.*

a. The ut-clauses in these two sentences both denote result, and take the subjunctive like clauses of purpose. But in purpose clauses nē (see 272, 2) is used for the negative *that not*, while in result clauses nōn, *not*, is a separate word as in English.

281. RULE. *The subjunctive with* ut, *negative* ut nōn, *is used to denote result.*

NOTE. — Observe that in purpose clauses the subjunctive is usually translated by the English *may* or *might*, or by the infinitive, while in result clauses the subjunctive is generally translated by the English indicative.

282. VOCABULARY

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, occupy.*

perterritus, -a, -um, *frightened.*

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (renovō from novus, *new*), *renew.*

sīc, adv., *so, in such a manner.*

tam, adv., *so, to such a degree.*

EXERCISES

283. 1. Dux mātūrāvit ut oppidum mūnīret. 2. Oppidum sīc mūnītum est ut tūtum esset. 3. Imperātor tam celeriter impetum fēcit ut hostēs ad salūtem fugerent. 4. Dux quam maximīs itineribus contendit nē hostēs oppidum occupārent. 5. Dux tam celeriter vēnit ut hostēs oppidum nōn occupārent. 6. Cum flūmen altum esset, tamen Caesar pontem fēcit ut exercitum suum trādūceret. 7. Cum bel-

lum cōnfēcisset, pontem rescidit. 8. Cum dux vēnisset, animus mīlitum ita renovātus est ut statim in hostīs impetum facerent. 9. Helvētiī, cum angustōs fīnīs habērent, domōs suās relīquērunt ut aliēnōs fīnīs occupārent.

284. 1. When you came, I was writing a letter. 2. When Cæsar had built a bridge, the enemy were so frightened that they fled. 3. Although the enemy are brave, we will not fear. 4. The leader was so brave that the soldiers praised him. 5. This king rules well that the people may praise him. 6. That king ruled so cruelly that the people did not love him.

CHAPTER XLVIII

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: Passive Voice (*all conjugations*)

Indirect Questions and Sequence of Tenses

285. *Paradigm*

Present

SINGULAR

I may be praised, advised, ruled, etc.

lauder	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
laudēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
laudētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur

PLURAL

laudēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
laudēminī	moneāminī	regāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
laudentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur

Imperfect

SINGULAR

I might be praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audīrer
laudārēris	monērēris	regerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
laudārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audīrētur

PLURAL

laudārēmur	monērēmur	legerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
laudārēminī	monērēminī	legerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
laudārentur	monērentur	legerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

Perfect

SINGULAR

I have been praised, advised, ruled, etc

laudātus sim	monitus sim	lēctus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
laudātus sīs	monitus sīs	rēctus sīs	captus sīs	audītus sīs
laudātus sit	monitus sit	rēctus sit	captus sit	audītus sit

PLURAL

laudātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	rēctī sīmus	captī sīmus	audītī sīmus
laudātī sītis	monitī sītis	rēctī sītis	captī sītis	audītī sītis
laudātī sint	monitī sint	rēctī sint	captī sint	audītī sint

Pluperfect

SINGULAR

I had been praised, advised, ruled, etc.

laudātus essem	monitus essem	lēctus essem	captus essem	audītus essem
laudātus essēs	monitus essēs	rēctus essēs	captus essēs	audītus essēs
laudātus esset	monitus esset	lēctus esset	captus esset	audītus esset

PLURAL

laudātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	rēctī essēmus	captī essēmus	audītī essēmus
laudātī essētis	monitī essētis	rēctī essētis	captī essētis	audītī essētis
laudātī essent	monitī essent	lēctī essent	captī essent	audītī essent

a. The present and imperfect subjunctive passive are formed from the active by merely substituting the passive endings for the active.

b. The perfect and pluperfect are formed by combining the perfect passive participle with **sim** and **essem**. Cf. 99, *c.*

286.   Indirect Questions

DIRECT ·	INDIRECT
1. **Quid facis ?** *what are you doing ?*	2. **Videt quid faciās,** *he sees what you are doing.*
3. **Cūr vēnistī ?** *why did you come ?*	4. **Audīvī cūr vēnissēs,** *I heard why you had come.*

a. It is readily seen that **quid faciās** (2) and **cūr vēnissēs** (4) are dependent clauses in the form of a question, being introduced by the interrogatives **quid** and **cūr**. The questions in 2 and 4 are implied without being asked directly as in 1 and 3, and hence are called *indirect questions.*

b. DEFINITION. *An indirect question is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word.*

287. RULE. *The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive mood.*

288.   Sequence of Tenses

We say : 1. I *come* that I *may* see (or *to see*), **veniō ut videam.**
2. I *came* that I *might* see (or *to see*), **vēnī ut vidērem.**
3. I *see* what he *has* done, **video quid fēcerit.**
4. I *saw* what he *had* done, **vīdī quid fēcisset.**

a. The change of *may* (1) to *might* (2) and *has* (3) to *had* (4), when the leading verb is changed from the present to the past, shows what is meant by *Sequence of Tenses.*

289.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

I Primary or Principal Tenses

1. **Videt**, *he sees* 2. **Vidēbit**, *he will see* 3. **Viderit**, *he will have seen*	**quid faciam**, *what I am doing* (or *do*) (action not past). **quid fēcerim**, *what I have done* (*did, was doing*) (action past).

II. Secondary or Historical Tenses

1. **Vidēbat**, *he saw, was seeing* 2. **Vīdit**, *he saw* 3. **Viderat**, *he had seen*	**quid facerem**, *what I was doing* (or *did*) (action not past). **quid fēcissem**, *what I had done* (action past).

a. Notice that the first group of tenses, called primary, includes the *present, future,* and *future perfect* indicative followed by the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive. The second group of tenses, called secondary, includes the *imperfect, perfect,* and

pluperfect indicative followed by the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive.

290. Rule. A *primary* tense is followed by the subjunctive *present* for action *not past*, or by the *perfect* for action *past*; a *secondary* tense is followed by the subjunctive *imperfect* for action *not past*, or by the *pluperfect* for action *past*.

291.   **VOCABULARY**

calamitās, -ātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*

nox, noctis, f., *night*

quantus, -a, -um, *how great ?*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many ?*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know.*

cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *learn;* cōgnōvī, *I have learned,* or *I know.*

EXERCISES

292. 1. Cōgnōvī cūr vēneris. 2. Sciō quid proximā nocte fēceris. 3. Nōn certior factus sum[1] cūr mīles pūnīrētur. 4. Rogāvimus quot mīlitēs interfectī essent. 5. Cōgnōvistī quantā cum virtūte cīvium urbs cōnservāta sit. 6. Quis sim sciēs ex eō quem ad tē mīsī. 7. Nostrī, cum ab hostibus numerō[2] superārentur, tamen diū atque ācriter pugnābant. 8. Cum clāmōrēs audītī essent, mīlitēs prōcēdere coepērunt. 9. Fortissimē pugnābunt nē culpentur. 10. Tam fortiter pugnābant ut nōn calamitāte culpārentur. 11. Haec urbs mūnīta erat nē ab hostibus caperētur. 12. Haec urbs tanta est et tot virōs habet ut ab hostibus tūta sit.

293. 1. I see what they are doing. 2. He asks how many soldiers have been killed. 3. I did not learn why this man was being punished. 4. I knew why you had been praised. 5. This town is being fortified that it may not be captured. 6. That you may be praised, that they may be warned, that we might not be punished.

---

[1] 269.   [2] 157, 158.

CHAPTER XLIX

IMPERATIVE MOOD: Active Voice

Reading Lesson

294. *Paradigm*

Present

SINGULAR

1. ——   ——
2. es, *be* (thou)   laudā, *praise* (thou)
3. ——   ——

PLURAL

1. ——   ——
2. este, *be* (ye)   laudāte, *praise* (ye)
3. ——   ——

SINGULAR

2. monē   rege   cape   audī

PLURAL

2. monēte   regite   capite   audīte

Future

SINGULAR

1. ——   ——
2. estō, *thou shalt be*   laudātō, *thou shalt praise*
3. estō, *he shall be*   laudātō, *he shall praise*

PLURAL

1. ——   ——
2. estōte, *ye shall be*   laudātōte, *ye shall praise*
3. suntō, *they shall be*   laudantō, *they shall praise*

SINGULAR

2. monētō   regitō   capitō   audītō
3. monētō   regitō   capitō   audītō

PLURAL

2. monētōte   regitōte   capitōte   audītōte
3. monentō   reguntō   capiuntō   audiuntō

a. The singular of the present imperative may be formed by dropping the -re (-se from **esse**) from the infinitive, thus:

Infinitive: esse, laudāre, monēre, regere, capere, audīre.
Imperative: es, laudā, monē, rege, cape, audī

b. The singular future imperative may be formed by affixing ·ō to the third person of the present indicative, as:

Indicative: est, laudat, monet, regit, capit, audit.
Imperative: estō, laudātō, monētō, regitō, capitō, audītō.

EXERCISES

295. 1. Es fortis, este fortēs, regitō, scrībite. 2. Suntō, capitō, monētōte, audiuntō 3. Capite arma, mīlitēs, et ad castra mātūrāte. 4. Scrībe ad mē, mī fīlī, quid faciās. 5. Dīc [1] mihi, mī puer, quid fēceris. 6. Venī, Mārce, et dūc tēcum amīcōs tuōs 7 Remanē dum veniam.

296. 1. Be wise, rule wisely, love your friends. 2. He shall rule, they shall conquer. ye shall advise. 3. Hear and thou shalt know. 4. Do well that you may be praised.

READING LESSON

297. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. Sed haec via angustior fuit. Praetereā Sēquanī iter Helvētiīs per suōs fīnīs dare recūsāvērunt Eō tempore Dumnorīx Haeduus nōn sōlum Sēquanīs sed etiam Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat. Itaque per Dumnorīgem, dēprecātōrem, Helvētiī ā Sēquanīs impetrāvērunt ut essent amīcī obsidēsque inter sē darent. Sēquanī obsidēs dant nē Helvētiōs prohibeant. Helvētiī quoque obsidēs dant ut sine ūllō maleficiō iter faciant.

NOTE. — The new words in this lesson are in the general vocabulary.

[1] **Dīcō, dūcō, faciō,** and **ferō** drop the final e in the singular of the present imperative active, leaving **dīc, dūc, fac,** and **fer.**

CHAPTER L

IMPERATIVE MOOD: Passive Voice

Reading Lesson

298. *Paradigm*

Present

SINGULAR

1. ———		———
2. laudāre, *be thou praised*		monēre, *be thou advised*
3. ———		———

PLURAL

1. ———		———
2. laudāminī, *be ye praised*		monēminī, *be ye advised*
3. ———		———

SINGULAR

2. regere	capere	audīre

PLURAL

2. regiminī	capiminī	audīminī

Future

SINGULAR

1. ———		———
2. laudātor, *thou shalt be praised*		monētor, *thou shalt be advised*
3. laudātor, *he shall be praised*		monētor, *he shall be advised*

PLURAL

1. ———		———
2. ———		———
3. laudantor, *they shall be praised*		monentor, *they shall be advised*

SINGULAR

2. regitor	capitor	audītor
3. regitor	capitor	audītor

PLURAL

3. reguntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

NOTE.—The singular of the present imperative passive, in form, is like the present infinitive active The future imperative passive is formed from the active by adding **r**.

EXERCISES

299. 1. Laudātor, monēminī, monēre. 2. Regitor, capi-untor, audītor. 3. Audīminī, laudātor, laudāre.

300. 1. Thou shalt be ruled, they shall be ruled, he shall be praised. 2. Be thou praised, be ye praised, they shall be warned.

READING LESSON

301. Ubi Caesar dē Helvētiōrum itinere certior factus est, eam mūnītiōnem, quam fēcerat, Labiēnum lēgātum dē-fendere iussit. Ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trīs quae circum Aquil-ēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit. Cum hīs quīnque legi-ōnibus per montīs in ulteriōrem Galliam contendit. Multae gentēs loca superiōra occupāvērunt ut exercitum Rōmānum prohibērent. Caesar, cum hās gentīs multīs proeliīs pepu-lisset, ab Ocelō, quod oppidum est citeriōris prōvinciae ex-trēmum, in fīnīs Vocontiōrum diē septimō pervēnit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

MILITES ROMANI LEGIONARII

CHAPTER LI

INFINITIVE: Active and Passive

Complementary and Object Infinitive

302. *Infinitive*

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Pres. laudāre, *to praise*	laudārī, *to be praised*
Perf. laudāvisse, *to have praised*	laudātus esse, *to have been praised*
Fut. laudātūrus esse, *to be about to praise*	laudātum īrī, *to be about to be praised*

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres	monēre	monērī	regere	regī
Perf.	monuisse	monitus esse	rēxisse	rēctus esse
Fut.	monitūrus esse	monitum īrī	rēctūrus esse	rēctum īrī
Pres.	capere	capī	audīre	audīrī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus esse	audīvisse	audītus esse
Fut.	captūrus esse	captum īrī	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

a. laudātūrus is the future active participle, declined like bonus, -a, -um, and may always be formed from the perfect passive participle by changing the ending -us to -ūrus, thus: perfect laudātus, future laudātūrus.

b. laudātum is the supine (to be explained later), which, in form, is just like the neuter of the perfect participle.

303. Complementary Infinitive

The infinitive is commonly used as in English to complete the meaning of another verb, as : pugnāre coepērunt, *they began to fight.*

304. RULE. *The infinitive is used to complete the meaning of another verb.*

NOTE. — The complementary infinitive is usually placed before the verb on which it depends

305.   The Object Infinitive

Verbs meaning *to say, to think, to know, to perceive*, in Latin as in English, often have a clause instead of a noun as object, as:

1. **Haec esse vēra scīmus,**

we know { *a. these (things) to be true*, or
{ *b. that these things are true.*

2. **Urbem captam esse videō,**

I see { *a. the city to have been taken*, or
{ *b. that the city has been taken.*

3. **Putō amīcum meum mox ventūrum esse,**

I think that my friend will soon come.

a. After these verbs of *knowing, thinking*, etc., the object clause in Latin has the verb in the Infinitive with its subject in the Accusative.

b. In English the object clause is introduced by *that*, and the verb is generally in the indicative mood.

306. RULE. *The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving.*

NOTE. — Translate the object infinitive as in *b* above, rarely as in *a*. It is sometimes well, however, to repeat the words as given in *a* till the meaning is clear and then translate as in *b*. And remember that in Latin there is no word for *that* as thus used.

307.   Indirect Discourse

DIRECT STATEMENT	DIRECT QUOTATION	INDIRECT QUOTATION
1. **Veniam.**	2. **Dīxit**: "**Veniam.**"	3. **Dīxit sē ventūrum esse.**
I will come.	*He said: "I will come."*	*He said that he would come.*

a. **Veniam** in 1 is a simple direct statement. In 2 this statement is quoted directly without change. In 3 it is quoted, but changed to the construction of an object clause as explained in 305. Words or clauses quoted without change are called *direct quotations* or *direct discourse*.

b. But words or clauses which when quoted are changed to the construction required by the verb on which the quotation depends are called *indirect quotations* or *indirect discourse.*

308. VOCABULARY

dīligenter, *carefully, attentively.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, consider.*

iam, adv., *now, already.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge, decide, consider.*

numquam, adv., *never.*

respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sus, *answer.*

sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*

Sōcratēs, -is, m., *Socrates.*

EXERCISES

309. 1. Puella laudātur, laudāta est, laudābitur. 2. Exīstimāsne puellam laudārī, laudātam esse, laudātum īrī? 3. Hostēs prōcēdunt, prōcessērunt, prōcēdent. 4. Quis dīxit hostīs prōcēdere, prōcessisse, prōcessūrōs esse? 5. Putāsne urbem esse tūtam? 6. Custōdēs respondērunt sē[1] dīligentissimē urbem custōdītūrōs esse. 7. Nōnne vidēs prīmam iam aciem prōcēdere atque tertiam aciem mox prōcessūram esse? 8. Tam fortiter pugnāvimus ut nōn culpārī dēbeāmus. 9. Scīsne quis veniat? 10. Exīstimō frātrem meum venīre. 11. Nōnne iūdicās Sōcratem fuisse sapientissimum hominum? 12. Illō[2] sapientiōrem hominem numquam fuisse iūdicō

310. 1. You are wise, I think that you are wise and brave. 2. I know that your friends will praise you. 3. I hope that you will be praised by all. 4. I will answer soon, he said that he[1] would answer soon. 5. He is writing, he says that he is writing, he says that he has already written a story. 6. He says that a story has already been written by him.

---

[1] 248, *d.*   [2] 172, with note.

CHAPTER LII

USES OF THE PARTICIPLES

Dative with the Gerundive

311.   *Participles*

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Pres.	laudāns, *praising*	———
Perf.	———	laudātus, *having been praised,* (or simply) *praised*
Fut.	laudātūrus, *about to praise*	laudandus, *to be praised*

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	monēns	———	regēns	———
Perf.	———	monitus	———	rēctus
Fut.	monitūrus	monendus	rēctūrus	regendus
Pres.	capiēns	———	audiēns	———
Perf.	———	captus	———	audītus
Fut.	captūrus	capiendus	audītūrus	audiendus

a. The present participle may be formed by changing the final -ō of the present indicative to -ēns[1] (-āns in the first conjugation), and is declined like prūdēns (459), except that the ablative singular ends in -e (460).

b. The perfect participle is given in the principal parts.

c. The future active participle is formed from the same stem as the perfect participle, but ends in -ūrus instead of -us.

d. The future passive participle (generally called the gerundive), may be formed from the present indicative by changing final -ō to -endus[1] (-andus in the first conjugation).

---

[1] In the second conjugation, which has an -e- before the -ō, only -ns is added to form the present participle and -ndus to form the gerundive.

312.   Uses of Participles

a. All participles have the construction of adjectives, and agree in gender, number, and case with some noun or pronoun expressed or understood.

b. The present and perfect participles are sometimes used like attributive adjectives, as : labōrantēs mīlitēs, *the struggling soldiers* ; mīlitēs armātī, *armed soldiers* ; or substantively, as : armātī, *armed men.*

c. But the perfect participle is most frequently used, just as in English, in agreement with a noun or pronoun to denote some attendant circumstance, as : hostēs, ā nostrīs repulsī, sē recēpērunt, *the enemy, having been repulsed by our men, retreated.*

d. The future active participle and the gerundive are often used in the predicate with the verb sum, and thus form what are called the Periphrastic Conjugations (475).

313.   Illustrative Examples

1. **Ventūrus erat,** *he was* (*a*) *about to come,*
   (*b*) *just ready to come,*
   (*c*) *on the point of coming,*
   (*d*) *intending to come,* etc.

2. **Laudandus es,** *you* (*a*) *are to be praised,*
   (*b*) *are worthy to be praised,*
   (*c*) *deserve to be praised,*
   (*d*) *must be praised,* etc.

3. **Mihi epistula scrībenda est,**
   (*a*) *for me there is a letter to be written,*
   (*b*) *I have a letter to write,*
   (*c*) *I must write a letter,*
   (*d*) *a letter must be written by me,* etc.

314. Rule. *The dative with the gerundive denotes the person who has the thing to do.*

a. In translation it is best first to repeat the real meaning of the participle as given in (*a*), then when the meaning of the whole clause is clear, translate by the form which will best express the idea. The translations (*c*) and (*d*) are especially common.

b. Remember that the gerundive is always passive, and so with this construction all such expressions as *I must* and *I have to,* before being put into Latin, must be changed to the form given in 313, 3, (*a*).

315. VOCABULARY

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, win over, influence.*

ad-propinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approach.*

dēdō, -ere,, dēdidī, dēditus, *give up;* sē dēdere, *to give one's self up, to surrender.*

epistula, -ae, f , *letter.*

imperium, -ī, n., *rule, supreme authority.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, assist.*

victor, -ōris, *victorious.*

EXERCISES

316. 1. Nōnne vidēs hostīs fugientīs ? 2. Mātūrā ut imperātōrem victōrem adpropinquantem videās. 3. Caesar mātūrāvit ut mīlitēs, quōs labōrantīs vidēbat, iuvāret. 4. Hostēs, celeriter gravibus volneribus cōnfectī, mox sē dēdidērunt. 5. Orgetorīx ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus erat. 6. Orgetorīx amīcīs sē rēgnum obtentūrum esse dīxit. 7. Orgetorīx spē imperī adductus erat ut coniūrātiōnem faceret. 8. Nōnne erat culpandus ? 9. Tū laudandus es ; illī culpandī sunt. 10. Nōbīs castra movenda sunt. 11. Vōbīs idem faciendum est. 12. Caesarī eōdem tempore sīgnum tubā dandum erat atque aciēs īnstruenda. 13. Dīxit sibi aciem īnstruendam esse. 14. Scīsne quid faciendum sit ?

317. 1. The commander sends aid to the struggling soldiers. 2. The wounded soldier is to be praised. 3. The army, induced by the hope of victory, was about to attack the town most spiritedly. 4. We are not to be blamed. 5. Soldiers, you must defend this city (314, *b*) that it may not be captured by the enemy. 6. Do you not think that this city is to be defended?

CHAPTER LIII

GERUND AND SUPINE: Formation and Uses

318.

	Gerund			Supine
Gen.	laudandī, *of praising*			
Dat.	laudandō, *for praising*			
Acc.	laudandum, *praising*		laudātum, *to praise*	
Abl.	laudandō, *by praising*		laudātū, *to praise*	

		Gerund		
Gen.	monendī	regendī	capiendī	audiendī
Dat.	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō
Acc.	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Abl.	monendō	regendō	capiendō	audiendō

		Supine		
Acc.	monitum	rēctum	captum	audītum
Abl.	monitū	rēctū	captū	audītū

The Gerund

a. The gerund is formed like the future passive participle (311, *d*), but it is a verbal noun used only in the neuter singular and has no nominative case. In the other cases it is governed by the same rules as other nouns, thus: **studium pugnandī**, *the desire of fighting*; **puerī sē currendō exercent**, *boys exercise themselves by running.*

b. The gerund as a verbal noun may take an object like a verb, as: **cōnsilium urbem capiendī,** *the plan of taking the city.* But instead of the gerund with an object the gerundive is more commonly used. The gerundive agrees with the noun like an adjective. The difference between the two constructions may be seen by the following:

319.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

Gen. **Studium** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{urbem videndī.} \\ \textbf{urbis videndae.} \end{array} \right\}$ *The desire of seeing the city.*

Dat. **Tempus ·nōn datur** $\left\{ \textbf{rēbus cōnstituendīs.} \right\}$ *Time is not given for arranging matters.*

Acc **Orgetorīx dēligitur** $\left\{ \textbf{ad rēs cōnficiendās.} \right\}$ *For completing matters Orgetorix is chosen.*

Abl **Tempus sūmō** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{scrībendō epistulās.} \\ \textbf{scrībendīs epistulīs.} \end{array} \right\}$ *I spend time in writing letters.*

Lēgātī missī sunt $\left\{ \textbf{dē auxiliō petendō.} \right\}$ *Envoys were sent with reference to seeking help.*

a. Observe that the accusative with ad denotes *purpose.*

NOTE. — The gerund with an object is used only in the genitive, and in the ablative *without a preposition.* Even in these cases the gerundive is more common.

The Supine

320. The supine has the same stem as the perfect participle, but it is a verbal noun, used only in two cases; and these are little used, each case being limited strictly to one particular use, as in the following:

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Lēgātī vēnērunt pācem petītum,** *the envoys came to seek peace.*

2. **Difficile dictū est,** *it is difficult to say.*

321. 1. RULE. *The supine in* -um *is used only after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

2 RULE. *The supine in* -ū *is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of specification* (158).

322.   VOCABULARY

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *select, choose.*

imprūdentia, -ae, f., *want of foresight, indiscretion.*

neque (shortened to nec before most consonants), conj, *and not*; neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *press hard, crush.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *speak, plead, entreat.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *request, ask*

potestās, -ātis, f., *power, chance, opportunity.*

spatium, -ī, n., *space, time.*

subitō, adv , *suddenly.*

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish*

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *transport, carry over.*

trīduum, -ī, n., *three days.*

EXERCISES

323. 1. Spēs urbem capiendī dēlēta est. 2. Hōc optimum factū est. 3. Dīviciācus sōlus ad senātum vēnit auxilium postulātum. 4. Subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium cēpērunt. 5. Nāvīs octōgintā satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat. 6. Tam breve spatium fuit ut eīs rēbus cōnstituendīs tempus nōn darētur. 7. Aliī tēlīs coniciendīs, aliī lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs, iuvābant. 8. Lēgātī in pāce petendā multitūdinem imprūdentiā culpāvērunt. 9. Ā Caesare petēbant ut sibi potestātem faceret lēgātōs mittendī. 10. Hostibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī [1] dandum [2] exīstimābat. 11. Itaque neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma

---

[1] 188.

[2] Here dandum is for dandum esse. After the future active and future passive participles in object clauses (305, 306) esse is often omitted.

capiendī spatium datum est. 12 Neque ōrandō impetrant.

324. 1. The difficulty of waging war, by fighting, in punishing this man. 2. Night puts an end to (makes the end of) the fighting. 3 For[1] completing these things three days are given 4 Deputies have come with reference to (dē, 269) seeking peace 5. The desire of defending the state is better than the hope of conquering an enemy. 6. They send deputies to Cæsar to seek help. 7. This is easy to do.

CHAPTER LIV

REVIEW OF LAUDŌ: Active with Synopsis

325. Review the active voice of laudō (473), and learn the synopsis (474)

READING LESSON

326. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnīs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs[2] in utram[3] partem fluat[4] difficile vīsū sit. Trāns id flūmen Helvētiī ratibus[2] ac lintribus iūnctīs omnīs cōpiās suās trānsportāre parābant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partīs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse,[5] quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse,[5] dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs mātūrāvit, et mox ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum trānsportāta erat

---

[1] 319, a.   [2] 48.   [3] 200   [4] 287.   [5] 306.

CHAPTER LV

REVIEW OF **LAUDŌ**: Passive with Synopsis

327. Review the passive voice of laudō (473), and learn the passive synopsis (474).

READING LESSON

328. Eōs impedītōs, quod dē Caesaris adventū nōndum cōgnōverant, oppressit et magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī[1] statim fugere coepērunt atque in proximās silvās sēsē recēpērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est Hīc pāgus ūnus patrum nostrōrum memoriā[2] L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita accidit ut eadem cīvitās, quae multīs annīs[3] ante exercitum Rōmānum magnā calamitāte adfēcerat, ab ipsō Caesare maiōre caede superārētur. Populō Rōmānō hāc victōriā[4] nihil fuit grātius.

CHAPTER LVI

REVIEW OF **MONEŌ** (*complete*)

329. Review moneō active and passive (476), and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

330. Cum hōc proelium factum esset, ut ad reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum pervenīret, pontem in Ararī facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū

---

[1] See foot-note 1, page 98.   [2] 219.   [3] 180   [4] 172 with note

commōtī erant, cum [1] id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ille ūnō diē fēcisset Itaque lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit : " Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, Helvētiī manēbunt ubi cōnstitueris. Sīn nōbīscum bellum gerēs, tibi virtūs Helvētiōrum dēspicienda nōn est, nec tua magnopere virtūs laudanda est. Nam Helvētiōs oppugnāvistī, cum aliī alterā in parte flūminis essent. Nōs magis [2] virtūte quam dolō contendimus."

CHAPTER LVII

REVIEW OF REGŌ AND CAPIŌ (*complete*)

331. Review **regō** (477) and **capiō** (478) entire, and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

332. Hīs Caesar ita respondit : " Mihi minus dubitātiōnis [3] datur quod eās rēs quās commemorāstis [4] memoriā teneō.[5] Illā vetere calamitāte graviter commōtus sum, quod nūllō maleficiō [6] populī Rōmānī accidit. Nōn cavēbat,[7] sed eō [8] dēceptus erat, quod nūlla erat causa bellī, neque sine causā bellum timendum [9] putāvit. Tamen veterēs iniūriae neglegendae sunt. Sed hōc certē, quod sum dictūrus, neque neglegendum neque praetermittendum est Sine meā voluntāte iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis,[4] atque Haeduōs vexāstis [4] eōrumque agrōs vāstāstis.[4] Nunc īnso-

---

[1] *Since.*   [2] **magis,** *rather* (194)   [3] 187, 188.

[4] **commemorāstis** is for **commemorāvistis.** In the perfect **v** often drops out, and contraction occurs.

[5] *I hold in memory = I remember.*   [6] 141.

[7] *They* (**populus Rōmānus**) *were not on their guard, but were deceived*

[8] **eō . . . quod,** *by this . . . because = from the fact, that.*

[9] See foot-note 2, p. 133.

lenter victōriā exsultātis. Sed vāna erit vestra spēs. Nam saepe deī hominıbus secundiōrēs interdum rēs concēdunt, quō [1] gravius ex commūtātıōne rērum doleant."

JUMENTUM

CHAPTER LVIII

REVIEW OF AUDIŌ (*complete*)

Ablative Absolute and Relatıve Clause of Purpose

333.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, prōcēdēmus, *these matters having been arranged, we will proceed.*

2. Nūllō hoste prohibente, Caesar exercitum redūxit, *no enemy hindering, Cæsar led back the army.*

a. In these phrases, **hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs**, *these matters having been arranged*, and **nūllō hoste prohibente**, *no enemy hindering*, the Latin nouns **hoste** and **rēbus** are not subjects or objects of any verb, but are used independently just like the corresponding English nouns *enemy* and *matters*. In English this use of a noun with the participle is called *nominative independent*, in Latin it is called *ablative absolute.* In Latin as in English a participle or adjective is used with the noun.

334. RULE. *A noun or pronoun with a participle or adjective agreeing with it is often used independently in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of some other action.*

---

[1] **quō**, *by which* = *in order that*, is generally used in place of **ut** in a purpose clause when a comparatıve follows.

335.   Illustrative Examples

1. **Dux hominēs mīsit, quī victōriam nūntiāvērunt,** *the leader sent men, who announced the victory.*

2. **Dux hominēs mīsit quī victōriam nūntiārent,** *the leader sent men who should announce (that they might announce or to announce) the victory.*

The relative clause in 1 states a fact and so takes the indicative (277, *a*); in 2 it denotes purpose, just as ut (272, 273) does, and takes the subjunctive for the same reason.·

336. Rule. *A relative clause denoting purpose takes the subjunctive.*

337. Review **audiō** active and passive (479), and learn the synopsis (cf. 474).

READING LESSON

338. "Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur utī[1] ea quae dīcitis vōs factūrōs[2] intellegam, vōbiscum pācem faciam." Dīvicō respondit : Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus[3] suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint;[4] eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō,[5] discessit. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque, quem ex omnī prōvinciā habēbat, praemittit quī videant[6] quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant.

EXERCISES

339. 1. No hostages having been given, Cæsar determined[7] to prolong[8] the war. 2. For without hostages he thought peace was not to be made. 3. But this day, no

---

[1] Before a vowel the form **utī** is sometimes used instead of **ut**

[2] See foot-note 2, p 133.

[3] **Maior** sometimes means *greater in age, older*; the plural, **maiōrēs**. means *elders, ancestors.*

[4] **Cōnsuērint** is for **cōnsuēverint.** Cf foot-note 4, p. 136

[5] 334.   [6] 336   [7] **cōnstituō.**   [8] **prōdūcō.**

enemy approaching,[1] he remained in camp   4. When he saw[2] that the enemy had broken[3] camp, he sent men to ascertain[4] where they were.[5]

CHAPTER LIX

SUM, POSSUM, PRŌSUM

Dative with Compounds and Dative of Service

340. Learn the inflection of **sum, possum,** and **prōsum** (480).

Dative with Compounds

341. RULE. *Many verbs compounded with the prepositions* ad, ante, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, *and a very few with* circum *and* con, *take an indirect object in the dative,* as :

1 **Labiēnus legiōnī praefuit,** *Labienus was in charge of the legion.*

2. **Pācem bellō antepōnō,** *I place peace before war.*

3 **Equitēs exercituī praemīsit,** *he sent the cavalry ahead of the army*

a. If the verb is transitive as in 2 and 3, it may take an accusative of the direct object in addition to the dative of the indirect. The direct object is also frequently used alone, thus : **Equitēs praemīsit,** *he sent the cavalry ahead.*

Dative of Service

342. RULE. *The dative is used with* sum *and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves,* as :

1. **Nōbīs sunt auxiliō,** *they are (for) a help to us.*

2. **Peditātum castrīs praesidiō mīsit,** *he sent the infantry* (for) *as a protection to the camp.*

---

[1] adpropinquō, -āre, etc   [2] *had seen.*
[3] *moved* (moveō).   [4] cōgnōscō.   [5] 287.

a. With the dative of service another dative of the *person to whom* (or *thing to which*) is very common, as **nōbīs** and **castrīs** in 1 and 2.

343.   VOCABULARY

ad-sum, *be near, be present, help.*

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, prefer.*

castellum, -ī, n , *fortress*

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *commit, intrust;* **proelium committere,** *to begin battle.*

dē-sum, *be lacking, fail.*

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *take by storm, capture.*

īn-firmus, -a, -um, *weak.*

ob-sum, *be in the way of, hinder, injure.*

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place in charge of.*

prae-sum, *be present, be at the head of, command*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *press.*

prō-sum, *be helpful to, benefit.*

subsidium, -ī, n., *relief, assistance*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage.*

EXERCISES

344. 1. Tempus proelī committendī adest. 2. Dux suīs aderat atque eīs erat auxiliō. 3. Hae rēs ad. nāvīs reficiendās erant ūsuī. 4. Hās rēs magnō sibi ūsuī fore exīstimābat. 5. Nūllō hoste [1] prohibente, legiōnēs in hīberna perdūcere poterat. 6. Labiēnum hībernīs praeposuit. 7. Cum tibi hae rēs prōsint, mihi obsunt. 8. Hīc vir gravī volnere [2] tam īnfirmus erat, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset. 9. Diūtius nostrī sē dēfendere nōn poterant, quod iam nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla eīs deerant. 10. Cum Crassus, quī equitātuī praeerat, nostram prīmam aciem premī vīdisset, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit. 11. Hostēs quam celerrimē [3] contendērunt ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Titūrius, expugnārent.

345. 1. Hold out till [4] I can (may be able to) come to you. 2. This will be a great help to you. 3. Will you be able to hold out longer ? 4. Three cohorts had been left as

---

[1] 334.   [2] 141.   . [3] 196.   [4] **dum.**

a protection to the camp. 5. Friendship is to be placed before praise. 6. Lælius said that he placed friendship before all things.

CHAPTER LX

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

346. Learn the conjugation of volō, nōlō, mālō (481).

347. Nōlī (plur. nōlīte) with the infinitive takes the place of the imperative with a negative, as : **nōlī timēre,** *do not* (be unwilling to) *fear.*

348.   VOCABULARY

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessū-rus, *withdraw.*

inquit, *said he,* a defective verb used only after one or two words of a direct quotation.

lacessō, -ere, lacessīvī, -sītus, *harass, attack, provoke.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī or quae-sīī, -sītus, *inquire, ask.*

quamdiū, adv., *as long as.*

sīn, conj, *but if.*

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hand over, give up, surrender.*

EXERCISES

349. 1. Velle, nōlēs, māluerat. 2. Volumus, nōluistis, māluerint. 3. Ex lēgātīs quaesīvit cūr ad sē vēnissent et quid vellent. 4. Cum ōrandō impetrāre nōn possent, tamen hostibus sē dēdere nōlēbant. 5. Tēlīs sē dēfendere, quamdiū poterant, māluērunt. 6. Nōlīte arma trādere, nisi interficī vultis. 7. Tū[1] manē, sī vīs, ego discēdere mālō. 8. Quis dīligī quam timērī nōn māvult ? 9. Ab Ariovistō, cum in conloquium venīre nōllet, Caesar postulāvit nē cōpiās suās trāns Rhēnum trādūceret. 10. "Nōlī," inquit, "Hae-duōs sociōsque eōrum iniūriā lacessere. 11. Redde obsidēs

[1] 241, *d.*

quōs habēs.   12   Sī id ita facere vīs, mihi[1] amīcitia tēcum erit."

350. 1. We ought to be willing, they seem to have been willing 2. Do not fear, but come to me at once. 3. All men prefer to be praised rather than blamed. 4. I cannot understand why the envoys did not wish to come. 5. When the legions were unwilling to advance farther, he asked why they feared. 6. If you wish, I will send a messenger to you that you may know what I have done.

CHAPTER LXI

EŌ AND ADEŌ

Rules for names of cities, and domus and rūs

351. Learn the conjugation of eō and adeō (482).

352. *a.* The names of cities and a few other words have a special case, which indicates location and is therefore called the *locative* case.

b. The locative singular, in the first and second declensions, has the same form as the genitive, and in the third declension ends in ī or e ; in the plural the endings in the locative of all declensions are the same as in the dative or ablative.

353.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

ABLATIVE WITH THE PREPOSITION **in**   LOCATIVE

1. { in urbe, *in the city.*
   in Ītaliā, *in Italy.*
   in silvīs, *in the woods.* }

2. { Rōmae, *at* or *in Rome.*
   Ephesī, *at* or *in Ephesus.*
   Carthāginī, *at* or *in Carthage.*
   domī, *at home.*
   rūrī, *in the country.*
   Athēnīs, *at Athens.* }

[1] 93.

ACCUSATIVE WITH THE PREPOSITION **ad** OR **in**	ACCUSATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION
3 { ad or in urbem, *to* or *into the city*. { ad or in Ītaliam, *to* or *into Italy*	4. { Rōmam, *to* or *into Rome*. { domum, *home*.
ABLATIVE WITH THE PREPOSITION **ab**, **dē**, OR **ex**	ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION
5 { ab, dē, ex urbe, *from the city*. { ab, dē, ex Ītaliā, *from Italy*.	6. { Rōmā, *from Rome*. { domō, *from home*.

354. Rules for names of cities and **domus** and **rūs** :

1. *Place* **where** *is expressed by the locative*.
2. *Place* **to** **which** *is expressed by the accusative without a preposition*.
3. *Place* **from** **which** *is expressed by the ablative without a preposition*.

a. In all designations of place *not names of cities*, etc., the place *where* is expressed by the ablative with **in**, place *to which* by the accusative with **ad** or **in**, place *from which* by the ablative with **ab** (**ā**), **dē**, or **ex** (**ē**).

NOTE 1. — The difference between **ad** (*to, towards, near*) with its opposite **ab** (*from, away from*) and **in** (*to, into*) with its opposite **ex** (*from, out of*) is clearly shown by the following diagram :
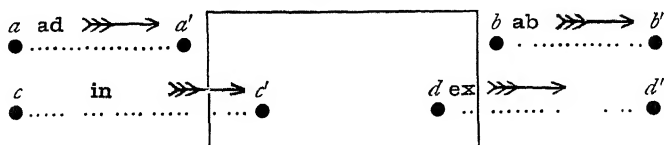
NOTE 2 — The prepositions **in** (*in, into*) and **sub** (*under*) are used with the accusative to express the place *towards which* something *moves*, the ablative to express the place *where* something *is* or *is done*, thus :
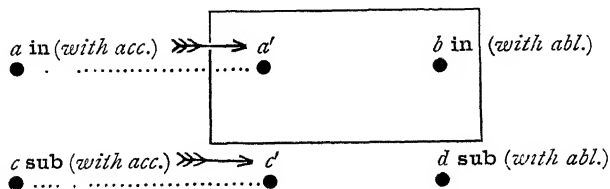
355.   VOCABULARY

Athēnae, -ārum, pl, f., *Athens*.

aut, conj , *or*; aut . . . aut, *either .. or*.

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*.

compeiiō or repeiiō, -īre, rep-periī, repertus, *find out*.

īnsula, -ae, f., *island*.

nātālis, -e, *of birth*; diēs nātā-lēs, *birth days*.

negōtium, -ī, n., *business*; *instructions*.

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūius, *go back, return*.

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back*

rūs, rūris, n , *country*.

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *decide, determine*.

trāns-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *cross*.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe* ; tūtō, adv , *safely*.

vadum, -ī, n., *ford*; vadō, *by a ford* or *by fording*.

EXERCISES

356. 1. Ī, ītō; aut prōcēdite aut redīte. 2. Illud flūmen vadō trānsītur, hōc nāvibus trānsībitur. 3. Nostrī hostīs flūmen trānseuntīs oppugnāvērunt. 4. Puer rūrī in Ītaliā nātus erat; Corinthī, Athēnīs, Rōmae, habitāverat. 5. Cum Rōmā redīsset, rūs iit habitātum.[1] 6. Rūrī quam in urbe habitāre mālēbat. 7. Redeuntibus annīs,[2] diēs nātālēs redeunt. 8. Equitēs subsidiō suīs iērunt. 9. Bellō[2] cōnfectō, imperātor cum exercitū domum rediit. 10. Dat negōtium huic ut quās possit adeat cīvitātīs. 11. Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. 12. Itaque pontem fēcit quō tūtius trānsīret.[3] 13 Est aqua sub ponte. 14. Sub pontem fluit flūmen.

357. 1. He is going, he will go; he says that he is going, that he will go. 2. This boy had gone to the country and was about to return home that he might be a help to his father. 3. Do you wish to return with me? 4. They have gone to the country, to the city, to Rome, to Italy. 5. They are about to return from the country, from the city, from Rome, from Italy. 6. They have lived in the country, in the city, in Rome, in Italy.

[1] 321.   [2] 334.   [3] Foot-note 1, p. 137.

CHAPTER LXII

FERŌ AND FĪŌ

Dative with Special Verbs

358. Learn the conjugation of ferō (483) and fīō (484).

359. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Eīs omnia crēdit,** *he trusts all things to them.*

2. **Eīs crēdit,** *he trusts* (gives credit to), or *believes them.*

3. **Nōbīs serviunt,** *they serve* (are servants to) *us.*

a. Some verbs, as shown by examples 1 and 2, take the dative of the person and accusative of the thing, or the dative of the person alone ; and some, as **serviunt** in 3, according to their real meaning are intransitive in Latin and take the dative only, although the English verbs by which they are translated are transitive and have the direct object.

360. RULE. *Most verbs meaning to favor, help, please, trust, and their contraries, also to believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.*

361. VOCABULARY

ad-ferō, -ferre, adtulī, adlātus, *bring to, bring.*

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *trust, believe, credit.*

ef-ferō (ex+ferō) (267, *a*), ef-ferre, extulī, ēlātus, *carry out, bring out.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go out.*

īn-ferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, *bring upon, make upon, inflict.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, pāritūrus, *obey.*

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, convince.*

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back, report.*

resistō, -ere, restitī, ——, *resist.*

serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūrus, *serve, be servant to, give heed to.*

voluptās, -ātis, f., *pleasure.*

362. 1. Fac hōc, facitō illud, id fierī potest. 2. Disce dīligenter . ut sapiēns fīās. 3. Fer nōbīs auxilium, nōlī patriae[1] bellum īnferre. 4. Discite fortiter ferre id quod ferendum est. 5 Superanda omnia ferendō sunt. 6. Imperātor exercituī imperat; mīlitēs imperātōrī parēbunt. 7. Omnēs gentēs illō tempore servīre populō Rōmānō quam imperāre aliīs mālēbant. 8. Orgetorīx cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent ut fīnitimīs bellum īnferrent. 9 Omne frūmentum sēcum domō extulērunt, quod posterō annō domum redīre nōlēbant. 10. Dux hominēs praemīsit quī, quid fieret,[2] cōgnōscerent[3] et ad sē referrent.

363. 1. This man has been made consul; the boy will become a man. 2. Who will bring us help? are you bringing help? 3. Obey the laws, thou shalt obey, we trust you. 4. Who is able to persuade us? 5 Did you resist the enemy's fierce attack? 6. By whom was this war most cruelly brought upon the country?

CHAPTER LXIII

DEPONENT VERBS

The Ablative with ūtor, fruor, etc

364. Learn the conjugation of the Deponent Verbs (485, 486 with *a–c*).

Deponent verbs have the forms of the passive voice with the meanings of the active, thus :

Stellās mīrāmur, *we wonder at the stars.*
Nautane mare verētur, *does the sailor dread the sea ?*

[1] 341.   [2] 287.   [3] 336.

365. ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Gladiīs ūtimur**, *we use* (we help ourselves by) *our swords*

2. **Hīs rēbus fruimur**, *we enjoy* (we enjoy ourselves by means of) *these things.*

NOTE — These verbs with a few others, from their real meaning, take the ablative of means, but the English verbs by which they are more simply translated have a direct object.

366. RULE. *The verbs* **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vēscor** *take the ablative.*

367. VOCABULARY

adorior, -īrī, adortus sum, attack.

causa, -ae, f., *cause* ; causā, ablative placed after a genitive, *for the sake of.*

fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*

fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *perform* (a duty).

impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; plu , *baggage-trains.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder, wonder at* ; *admire.*

potior, -īrī, potītus sum, *get possession of.*

proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum, *start, set out.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *fear, be afraid of.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, adopt.*

vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *fear, dread, reverence.*

vēscor, -ī, ——, *eat.*

EXERCISES

368. 1. Sequī, secūtus esse vidētur, sē secūtūrum esse dīcit. 2. Tū proficīscere, ego sequar. 3. Sequēbāminī, cūr secūtī sītis nōn intellegō. 4. Fīnem sequendī fēcit, labōribus fūnctus est. 5. Eīs, quae terra mareque ferunt, vēscimur. 6. Lūcem, quā fruimur, mīrāmur. 7. Multī Caesarem amīcitiae causā secūtī sunt. 8. Veritī perīculum, domum redīre volēbant. 9. Eius reī quae causa esset mīrātus, ex ipsīs quaesiit. 10. Mīlitēs nōn sē hostīs verērī sed magnitūdinem silvārum timēre dīcēbant. 11. Cohortātus suōs, subitō ūnam partem adortus est cum eī quī flūmen trānsīs-

sent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent. 12. Helvētiī domō proficīscēbantur ut tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrentur.

369. 1. We will follow, they say that they will follow. 2. I will start; you follow me. 3. This army is to be followed by us. 4. We have got possession of the enemy's camp and baggage. 5 We enjoy the light. 6. They used their own weapons more freely. 7. He urges the soldiers not to (that they may not) fear the enemy.

CHAPTER LXIV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Passive of Intransitive Verbs

370. Learn what is said about impersonal verbs in 488, 489.

371. *a.* When the active voice is changed to the passive, that which is the direct object of the verb in the active becomes the subject in the passive, as :

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Hominem videō,	**Homō ā mē vidētur,**
I see the man.	*The man is seen by me.*

b. If the verb in the active has no object, or only an indirect object, it can have no subject in the passive ; but in Latin such verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the passive, as :

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
1. **Currit,** *he runs.*	1. **Curritur** (it is run), *there is running.*
2. **Tibi crēdō,** *I trust you.*	2. **Tibi ā mē crēditur,** *you are trusted by me.*

NOTE. — If in the active the verb governs the dative (360), the dative is retained in the passive and may often be translated as the subject in English, as in 2 above.

372. RULE. *Intransitive verbs are used only impersonally in the passive.*

373.   VOCABULARY

cōnstat, -āre, ——, *it is evi-
    dent*.

fit, fierī, factum est (as imper-
    sonal), *it comes about, it hap-
    pens*.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pass
    the winter, winter*; hiemātur,
    the winter is passed.

hiems, -is, f., *winter*.

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum
    est, *it is permitted, one may*,
    etc.

morior, morī, mortuus sum,
    die.

necesse, indecl., adj, *necessary,
    inevitable*.

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus,
    harm, injure.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, *it is neces-
    sary, one ought*.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *disturb-
    ance, alarm*.

prō-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus,
    provide.

EXERCISES

374. 1. Pugnābitur, ācriter pugnātum est, accidēbat ut
pugnārētur. 2. Ad castra eunt, ad castra ītur, ad castra
nōbīs eundum est,[1] quis dīcit nōbīs ad castra eundum
esse? 3. Tibi nōn nocēbō, tibi ā mē nocēbitur, eīs nōn
nocēbitur. 4. Tibi persuādēre nōn possum, tibi persuā-
dērī nōn poterat. 5. Hīs resistī nōn poterat. 6. Tibi
īre licet, tibi īre licēbit, rogat ut sibi domum īre liceat.
7 Omnibus morī necesse est. 8. Tē rūre redīre oportet.[2]
9. Mīlitibus nōn cōnstābat quid fierī oportēret. 10. Nam
in hīs locīs, ubi hiemārī oportēbat, frūmentum in[3] hiemem
prōvīsum nōn erat. 11. Itaque magna (id quod necesse
erat accidere) tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.

375. 1. I will not harm you, you will not be harmed by
me. 2. You are trusted by all, do you trust these men?
3. The Helvetii had too narrow borders and were hemmed
in by very high mountains. 4. Because of these things it

---

[1] 488, *b*.
[2] *It is necessary that you should return*, or, *you ought to return*.
[3] In before a word referring to the future often means *for*.

came about that they wished to go from home.   5. They asked Cæsar that it might be allowed them to go through the province.

CHAPTER LXV

TWO ACCUSATIVES AND ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

Reading Lesson

376.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Nātūra nōs multa docuit,** *nature has taught us many things.*

2. **Haeduī Caesarem auxilium rogant,** *the Haedui ask help from Cæsar.*

3. **Haeduī ā Caesare auxilium petunt,** *the Haedui seek help from Cæsar.*

377. RULE   *Verbs of asking and teaching, and some verbs of demanding, take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.*

a. But **petō** always, and **postulō** generally, requires the preposition **ā** (**ab**), and **quaerō ex** (**ab, dē**). with the *ablative of the person.*

378.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Mē metū līberābis.** *you will free me from fear.*

2 **Castra ex eō locō movent,** *they move the camp from this place.*

3. **Equus aquā caret,** *the horse lacks water.*

379. RULE. *After words denoting separation, privation, and want, the ablative is used.*

NOTE. — In 1 no preposition is required   No precise rule can be given for this. But generally, when real *movement,* *space,* or *distance* is involved, as in 2, the preposition is required, while with merely figurative separation and want, as in 1 and 3, the preposition is not required

380. Opus and ūsus, meaning *need,* take the ablative, as : **auxiliō opus est,** *there is need of help.*

381. Nostrī equitēs, cupidius [1] novissimum [2] agmen īnse-
cūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium com-
mittunt. Itaque Helvētiī nostrō impetuī audācius resistere
ausī sunt. [3] Caesar calamitātem veritus suōs ā proeliō con-
tinēbat. Eō tempore satis esse arbitrābātur hostīs rapīnīs
prohibēre atque eōs lacessere nē agrōs sociōrum popu-
lārentur. Interim Caesarī frūmentō opus erat. Itaque
Haeduōs frūmentum, quod pollicitī erant, flāgitābat. Nam
frūmentō, [4] quod flūmine [5] Ararī subvēxerat, minus ūtī pote-
rat, [6] quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus dis-
cēdere nōlēbat.

EXERCISES

382. 1. The enemy's cavalry at this time resisted the
Romans very boldly 2. And Cæsar feared disaster, for his
cavalry needed grain. 3 But, since the enemy had turned
their course from the river, he could not use his own
grain. 4. And so, in order that he might be freed from
anxiety, [7] he asked for grain from the Hædui.

NOTE. — The words needed in this exercise, except those repeatedly used
before, are to be found in 376, 378, and 381.

[1] 178, *a*.　　[2] *newest = last, rear.*　　[3] 487.　　[4] 366　　[5] 48
[6] **minus .**　　**poterat,** *he was less able.*　　[7] *anxiety = fear =* **metus**

EARLY ROMAN COIN

CHAPTER LXVI

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Cognate Accusative

383.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Cōnsilia quae cēpimus hostibus ēnūntiantur,** *the plans which we have formed are reported to the enemy.*

2. **Fugitīvus dīxit cōnsilia quae cēpissēmus hostibus ēnūntiārī,** *the fugitive said that the plans which we had formed were reported to the enemy.*

a. The verb **ēnūntiantur,** which is in the principal clause of 1, becomes **ēnūntiārī** in 2, according to 306, but **cēpimus,** which is in the subordinate clause of 1, becomes subjunctive in 2.

384. RULE. *A subordinate clause in indirect discourse* (307, *a* and *b*) *takes the subjunctive.*

385.   Cognate Accusative

1. **Vītam bonam vīvit,** *he lives a good life.*

2. **Eōs hōc moneō,** *I warn them this* = (*thus*), or *I give them this* (kind of) *warning.*

a. In 1 the noun and verb have a similar, or kindred, meaning. Such an accusative is therefore called the *cognate accusative,* from the Latin word **cōgnātus,** *kindred, connected with.*

b. In 2 **hōc** does not refer to some outside object, but merely limits the idea contained within the verb itself and is closely connected with it, and so is called *cognate accusative.*

c. A cognate accusative, therefore, is either a noun having the same or kindred meaning with the verb, or a neuter pronoun or adjective limiting the idea expressed in the verb itself.

386. With **valeō,** *be strong, have influence,* and with **possum,** *be able, have power,* the neuter accusatives, **nihil, quid, quan-**

tum, and **multum (plūs, plūrimum,** or **minus, minimum**),
are quite common as cognate, or adverbial, accusatives, as :

1. **Quid potest ?** *what power has he,* or *what can he do ?*
2. **Nihil potest,** *he has no power,* or *he can do nothing*
3. **Multum (plūs, plūrimum) potest,** *he has much (more, most,
   or very great) power.*

READING LESSON

387. Ubi sē diūtius[1] dūcī[2] intellēxit, eōrum prīncipēs
convocāvit. In[3] hīs erant Dīviciācus et Liscus, quī summō
magistrātuī praeerat. Graviter eōs accūsat, quod, tam pro-
pinquīs hostibus,[4] ab eīs nōn frūmentum cōnferātur ; prae-
sertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit,
multō[5] etiam gravius queritur. Tum Liscus ōrātiōne
Caesaris adductus respondet : esse nōn nūllōs[6] quōrum
auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī plūs possint
quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā ōrātiōne multitūdi-
nem dēterrēre nē[7] frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant.
Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur
hostibus ēnūntiārī ; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse.

EXERCISES

388. 1. The Hædui put Cæsar off, although he had
undertaken the war at[8] their entreaties. 2. The people
were influenced by the reckless talk of the leaders, who
had very great power. 3. Liscus said that these leaders
had more influence than he himself. 4. Although Liscus
held[9] the highest office, he could not restrain these men.

NOTE. — Find the words and phrases for this exercise in 387.

[1] 178, *a*.   [2] *is being drawn (on)* = *put off*   [3] *among.*
[4] *The enemy* (being) *so near* (334).   [5] 180.   [6] *not none* = *some.*
[7] **nē . . . cōnferant,** *so that they may not bring* = *from bringing* (277, *b*).
[8] *at* = *because of* (141).   [9] Use the proper form of **praesum.**

CHAPTER LXVII

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY

389.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1. **Cupidus pugnandī est,** *he is desirous of fighting*
2. **Reī mīlitāris perītus est,** *he is experienced in military affairs*

390. RULE. *Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites, govern the genitive.*

391.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE

Est summā virtūte, *he is [a man]* (with. possessed of) *of the greatest courage*

392. RULE. *A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the ablative to denote quality.* Compare 136.

READING LESSON

393. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed quod, plūribus[1] praesentibus, eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, ex sōlō quaerit ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Reperit ipsum esse[2] Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, cupidum rērum novārum;[3] multōs annōs magnum numerum equitātūs circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātīs plūrimum posse[2] Praetereā fāvit Helvētiīs[4] Dumnorīx, quod huius potentiae causā ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēbat; ōderat Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū[5] potentia eius minor erat. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar initium[2] fugae, quae paucīs ante diēbus facta esset,[6] factum esse[2] ā Dumnorīge quī equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, praeerat.

---

[1] *Too many* (178, *a*; and 334) *being present = while too many were present.*
[2] 306.   [3] **rērum novārum,** *new things = change, revolution.*
[4] 360.   [5] 141   [6] 384.

EXERCISES

394. 1. Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, was a man of great boldness. 2. Cæsar, desirous of finding out why Dumnorix favored the Helvetii, inquired from Liscus alone. 3 He learned that Dumnorix for the sake of power had a wife from the Helvetii. 4. By the coming of the Romans Dumnorix thought that this power would be less.

CHAPTER LXVIII

VERBS OF FEARING AND INDIRECT REQUESTS

Hortatory Subjunctive

395.   ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

1 **Timeō nē veniat,** *I fear that* (lest) *he will* (may) *come.*

2. **Timeō ut veniat,** *I fear that he will* (may) *not come.*

396. RULE. *Verbs of fearing take the subjunctive with* **nē** *or* **ut**

a. With verbs of fearing **nē** is translated *that,* or *lest,* and **ut** *that not.*

Hortatory Subjunctive

397. The subjunctive is used in exhortations, corresponding to the English *let,* as:

veniat, *let him come;* **nē eāmus,** *let us not go.*

398.   Requests

DIRECT	INDIRECT
1. **Venī,** *come.*	1. **Eī persuāsit ut venīret,** *he persuaded him to come.*
2. **Nōlī venīre,** *do not come*	2 **Eum cohortātus est nē venīret,** *he urged him not to come.*
3. **Veniat,** *let him come.*	3. **Postulābat ut venīret,** *he requested that he should come.*

a. Definition. *An indirect request is a subordinate clause following a verb expressing or implying a command or request.*

399. Rule. *The verb of an indirect request is in the subjunctive.*

<div align="center">READING LESSON</div>

400. His[1] cōgnitīs — praesertim cum[2] Dumnorīx sē suspīciōne līberāre nōn posset — Caesar satis esse causae[3] arbitrābātur quā rē[4] in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Sed hōc facere nōlēbat ; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et per interpretem, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur. Ostendit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta ; petit atque hortātur ut sine offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā,[5] statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

<div align="center">EXERCISES</div>

401. 1. I fear that he will do this, I fear that he will not do this. 2. Let him do this, let us not do this. 3. Do this, do not do this. 4. He persuaded him to do this, he exhorted them not to do this. 5. Cæsar urged the state to punish Dumnorix. 6. He himself did not wish to hurt the feelings of Diviciacus.

---

[1] *these (things).*   [2] *since.*   [3] 188.
[4] *on account of which thing = wherefore, why*
[5] *the cause having been learned = after investigating the case* (334).

CHAPTER LXIX

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. READING LESSON

402. Indefinite Pronouns

Mas	Fem	Neu.	
Quis	qua	quid (quod), *any*, used after **sī, nisi, nē**, and **num**, is declined like the interrogative **quis** (233 or 471), except that the feminine singular and neuter plural have **qua** instead of **quae**.	
Quisquam		quidquam (quicquam), *any*, *any at all*, used in negative clauses, or clauses implying a negative, occurs only in the singular masculine and neuter.	
Aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod), *some*, *some one* (but no one in particular), is declined like **quis** above. (See 472.)	
Quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque), *each*, *every*, *every one*, is declined like **quis**, with the suffix **-que** added.	
Quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam), *a certain*, *some one* (whom the writer has in mind), is declined regularly (472).	
Quīvīs	quaevīs	quidvīs (quodvīs)	*any one you wish*,
Quīlibet	quaelibet	quidlibet (quodlibet)	*any one whosoever*, is declined like **quīdam**

403. Negative Combinations

1. In negative purpose in Latin **nē quis (qua, quid)**, *that not* (or *lest*) *any one* is used for *that no one*, as : **nē quis veniat**, *that no one may come.*

2. In statements *and no one = and not any one* = **neque** (or **nec**) **quisquam**, as : **nec quisquam vēnit**, *and no one came.*

404. Ipse Dīviciācus plūrimum [1] domī atque in reliquā Galliā poterat. Sed Dumnorīx erat nōn magnā grātiā,[2] atque eā quam habēbat potentiā [3] paene ad perniciem Dī-viciācī, suī frātris, ūtēbātur. Nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam Dīviciācus dolōris [4] cēpit. Tamen quōdam amōre frāternō commōtus est, quem quīvīs in [5] frātrem habēre dē-bet. Itaque cum, quae quisque dē frātre dīxīsset, cōgnō-visset, Caesarem obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret.[6] Nam verēbātur nē, sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset,[7] cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenē-ret, aliquī id suā voluntāte factum [8] exīstimārent Haec [9] cum ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram [10] prēndit ; cōn-solātus rogat [11] fīnem ōrandī faciat. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat. Monet ut in [12] reliquum tempus omnīs suspīciōnēs vītet Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

[1] 386.   [2] 392.   [3] 366   [4] 188.

[5] *for* or *toward.*

[6] **statuō**, *decide, take measures ;* **nē quid . . . statueret**, *that he should not take any very severe measures against his brother.*

[7] *should happen = should be done to.*

[8] Foot-note 2, p. 133.

[9] Put before the conjunction for emphasis, and to show that it refers back to the preceding sentence

[10] Supply *haud.*

[11] The **ut** is sometimes, as here, omitted.

[12] *for.* Cf. foot-note 3, p. 149.

CHAPTER LXX

REVIEW OF TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

405. The tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses do not designate a fixed or definite time, but represent an act as *past* or *not past* at the time designated by the verb with which the subjunctive is connected (288–290), thus :

406.   Rules for the Tenses of the Subjunctive

1. The *present* subjunctive represents an act or event *not past*, connected with a *primary* tense.

2. The *imperfect* subjunctive represents an act or event *not past*, connected with a *secondary* tense.

3. The *perfect* subjunctive represents a *past* act or event, connected with a *primary* tense.

4. The *pluperfect* subjunctive represents a *past* act or event, connected with a *secondary* tense.

NOTE. — Apply the rules as given above to the subjunctives in the following

READING LESSON

407. Eōdem diē Caesar, ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis [1] esset ascēnsus montis quī cōgnōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. [2] Labiēnō imperat ut cum duābus legiōnibus summum iugum montis ascendat. P. [2] Cōnsidius, quī reī [3] mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur, [4] cum explōrātōribus praemittitur. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, Cōnsidius ad

---

[1] *what was the ascent, who should find out, he sent* = *he sent* (men) *to find out*, etc. (336).

[2] T. for Titus ; P. for Publius.   [3] 390.   [4] *was held* = *was considered.*

Caesarem contendit ; dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,[1] ab hostibus tenērī   Caesar celeriter aciem īnstrūxit   Labiēnus, cuī erat [2] praescrīptum nē [3] proelium committeret, nisi ipse Caesar cum cōpiīs suīs adesset, nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.   Multō [4] diē Caesar cōgnōvit montem ā Labiēnō tenērī et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod [5] nōn vīdisset [6] renūntiāsse.[7]

EXERCISES

408. 1 Cæsar directed [8] Labienus to ascend [9] the hill
2. He sends Considius to ascertain what is being done.[10]
3 He reports that Labienus does not hold the hill which he has ascended. 4. Considius had seen Labienus on top of [11] the hill. 5. But he was so frightened that he thought that Labienus was an enemy.

CHAPTER LXXI

TENSES OF PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

409. The tenses of the participle and infinitive denote time, *present, past,* or *future,* relative to the time designated by the verb wıth which they are connected. Compare 405.

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

410.   Participles

1. **Mīlitēs domō proficīscentīs vīdī,** *I saw the soldiers* (starting)
                                       as they were starting from home.
2. **Mīlitēs domō profectōs vīdī,** *I saw the soldiers* (having started)
                                       after they had started from home.
3. **Mīlitēs domō profectūrōs vīdī,** *I saw the soldiers* (about to start) *as they were about to start from home.*

---

[1] 384.   [2] 341, 372. *who had been directed.*   [3] *not to,* etc. 398, 2 ; 399.
[4] *at much day = late ın the day.*   [5] *what.*   [6] 384.   [7] Foot-note 4, p. 136.
[8] **praescrībō** (341).   [9] 398, 399.   [10] 287.   [11] *top of =* **summus.**

411. Infinitives

1. The present infinitive represents an act as taking place at the same time as that designated by the verb on which it depends, as:

> Dīcit sē scrībere, *he says that he is writing.*
> Dīxit sē scrībere, *he said that he was writing.*

2. The perfect infinitive represents an act that took place before the time designated by the verb on which it depends, as :

> Dīcit sē scrīpsisse, *he says that he has written.*
> Dīxit sē scrīpsisse, *he said that he had written.*

3. The future infinitive represents an act that is to take place later than the time designated by the verb on which it depends, as :

> Dīcit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he says that he will write.*
> Dīxit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he said that he would write.*

EXERCISES

412. 1. Dux, in proelium prōcessūrus, mīlitēs cohortātus est. 2. Dux, mīlitēs cohortātus, in proelium prōcessit. 3. Dux, in proelium prōcēdēns, volnerātus est. 4. Duce[1] mīlitēs cohortātō, sīgnum proelī committendī datum est. 5. Duce[1] mīlitēs cohortante, hostēs prōcessērunt. 6. Proeliō commissō, multī volnerātī sunt. 7. Mīlitēs tēla coniciunt, mīlitēs tēla conicere dīxit. 8. Mīlitēs tēla coniēcērunt, mīlitēs tēla coniēcisse dīxit. 9. Mīlitēs mox tēla coniectūrōs esse dīxit.

---

[1] 334. Why are **dux**, in 1, 2, and 3, and **duce**, in 4 and 5, not in the same case ? Does the tense or voice of the participle have anything to do with the case of the noun with which it agrees ?

413. 1. The leader was wounded while[1] exhorting his soldiers. 2. The leader, having exhorted his soldiers, gave the signal for[2] battle. 3. The soldiers, having seized[3] their arms, are advancing. 4. He said that the soldiers were advancing. 5. We think that the soldiers have advanced and will soon commence battle.

READING LESSON

414. Posterō diē Caesar iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit atque ad oppidum fīnitimum frūmentī comparandī causā īre contendit. Helvētiī, quod Rōmānōs frūmentō sē interclūsūrōs esse exīstimārent, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt. Itaque Caesar equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse triplicem aciem īnstrūxit atque in summō iugō omnia auxilia conlocārī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt, et sub nostram aciem successērunt. Caesar, remōtīs equīs nē qua[4] spēs fugae relinquerētur, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō,[5] quod plūra eōrum scūta ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxa sunt. Tandem volneribus cōnfectī, ad montem, quī aderat, sē recipere coepērunt.

[1] Use no word for *while*.

[2] *for* here = *of*

[3] Use the proper form of **capiō**. The perfect participle in Latin, except in deponent verbs, is always passive. So in changing from English to Latin the perfect active participle must first be changed to the passive. Thus *having seized their arms* will become *their arms having been seized*. Will the word for *arms* then be subject nominative, or independent and therefore ablative absolute?

[4] 402; 403, 1.   [5] 342.

CHAPTER LXXII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH DUM, DŌNEC, ETC.

415. I. **Dum**, *while*, regularly takes the present indicative, as :

Dum haec geruntur, *while these things were* (being done) *going on.*

2. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, take the indicative, as :

Quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit, *he resisted very bravely as long as he could.*

3. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, regularly take

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, as :

Dōnec rediit, silentium fuit, *until he returned there was silence.*

b. The subjunctive to denote intention or expectancy, as :

Exspectābat Caesar dum nāvēs convenīrent, *Caesar waited until the ships should assemble,* or *for the ships to assemble.*

416. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before, sooner than*, take

a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, as :

Profectus sum ante quam vēnistī, *I started before you came.*

b. The subjunctive to denote intention, expectancy, or prevention, as :

Priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, lātius exercitum distribuit, *before more states should conspire, he distributed his army more widely.*

417.   **READING LESSON**

Dum haec geruntur, Boiī, quī novissimīs hostium praesidiō[1] erant, nostrōs ab latere apertō lacessere coepērunt; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī proelium celeriter redintegrāre statuērunt, priusquam Rōmānī Boiōs repellere possent. Diū proelium dubium erat. Nam Rōmānīs bipartītō eōdem

[1] 342.

tempore pugnandum [1] erat. Hostēs, quoad potuērunt, sustinuērunt atque ācriter pugnāvērunt, dōnec nostrī impedīmentīs [2] castrīsque potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē [3] fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: in fīnīs Lingonum quārtō diē pervēnērunt. Trīduum [4] propter volnera mīlitum Caesarī morandum [1] erat, priusquam eōs sequī potuit. Itaque Lingonibus imperāvit nē Helvētiōs frūmentō iuvārent, quoad ipse cum exercitū vēnisset.

<div align="center">EXERCISES</div>

418. 1. The battle was not doubtful till the Boii came to the assistance [5] of the Helvetii. 2. While the Boii were assailing our men on the flank, [6] the Helvetii renewed [7] the battle. 3. Then the Romans had to fight [8] fiercely before they could get possession of the camp. 4. After the battle Cæsar delayed until he could assist the wounded. [9] 5. Before the army was able to follow, the enemy had escaped. [10]

<div align="center">

CHAPTER LXXIII

THE INDICATIVE WITH POSTQUAM, UBI, ETC.

</div>

419. RULE. Postquam, *after*; ubi, ut, *when, as soon as*; simul ac (atque 133, note), *as soon as, take the indicative* (generally perfect tense).

NOTE. — **Ut**, meaning *as* (not temporal), always takes the indicative, as: **proximā nocte, ut dīxerat, profectus est**, *on the next night, he started, as he had said.*

---

[1] 488, *b.*   [2] 366.   [3] *of,* not *from* (foot-note 1, p. 89).   [4] 221.
[5] 342.   [6] latus.   [7] redintegrō, āre, etc.
[8] *it was to be fought,* etc. (488, *b*).
[9] Foot-note 1, p. 98.   [10] effugiō.

420.   READING LESSON

Interim Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī[1] cum eum in itinere convēnissent, eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō[2] postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs et arma poposcit. Dum ea cōnferuntur circiter hominum mīlia vi, timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs[3] suppliciō adficerentur, prīmā nocte, ē castrīs Helvētiōrum effūgērunt. Quod[1] ubi Caesar intellēxit, imperāvit ut redūcerentur; reliquōs omnīs armīs trāditīs[4] in dēditiōnem accēpit. Ita bellum Helvētiōrum cōnfectum est. Helvētiōs in fīnīs suōs, unde[5] erant profectī, revertī iussit. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x. Summa omnium, quī domō exiērunt, fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii.

[1] **Qui cum,** *who when = and when they.* **Quod ubi Caesar intel-lēxit** = *and when Cæsar learned this.* In Latin a relative, pronoun or adveib, at the beginning of a sentence, referring to something in the preceding sentence, serves as a connective, where the English uses a demonstrative or personal pronoun, often with a conjunction.

[2] *There after Cæsar came = after Cæsar came there.* **eō** refers to the preceding sentence, and so is put first to connect the thought more closely. In English the conjunction regularly comes first. Cf. foot-note 9, p. 158.

[3] *The arms being given up = if their arms should be given up.* The ablative absolute is often equivalent to an English clause. It is well first to give the words their exact meaning, then translate by whatever phrase or clause will best express the idea

[4] What is the best translation for *armīs trāditīs* here?

[5] PLACE WHERE

ibi, *in that place, there*
ubi, *in which place, where*

PLACE TO WHICH

eō, *to that place, thither, there.*
quō, *to which place, whither, where.*

PLACE FROM WHICH

inde, *from that place, thence, there*
unde, *from which place, whence, where.*

CHAPTER LXXIV

CONDITIONS AND WISHES

421. A conditional sentence contains two clauses : the *condition*, introduced by **sī**, *if* (negative **nisi** or **sī nōn**), and the *conclusion*.

NOTE. — Read very carefully 422–424, then learn 425

ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

422. Simple Conditions

A condition which simply states that a certain thing is (or was) true, if some other thing is (or was) true, without implying anything as to the fact, takes the indicative, in any tense required, as ·

a. **Sī hōc facis, rēctē facis,** *if you do this, you do right.*

b. **Sī hōc fēcistī, tē laudō,** *if you did this, I commend you.*

c. **Sī dux aderat, mīlitēs fortiter pugnābant,** *if the leader was present, the soldiers fought bravely.*

423. Future Conditions

I. *Future more Vivid with the Indicative*

A condition, referring distinctly or vividly to the future, corresponding to the English with *shall* or *will* and implying expectation or probability, takes the indicative; future (or *future perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the future in the conclusion, as :

(Time of condition and conclusion the same)

a. **Sī mīlitēs in proelium prōcēdent, dux cum eīs ībit.**
If the soldiers advance to battle, the leader will go with them.

(Condition completed)

b. **Nisi arma trādideris, pācem tēcum nōn faciet.**
Unless you give (shall have given) up the arms, he will not make peace with you.

NOTE. — The arms must be given up *before* peace will be made.

2. *Future less Vivid with the Subjunctive*

A condition referring less distinctly or vividly to the future, corresponding to the English with *should* or *would* and implying uncertainty or mere possibility, takes the subjunctive; present (or *perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the present in the conclusion, as:

(Time of condition and conclusion the same)

a. **Sī mīlitēs in proelium prōcēdant, dux cum eīs eat.**
If the soldiers should advance to battle, the leader would go with them.

(Condition completed)

b. **Sī arma trādideris, pācem tēcum faciat.**
If you should give up the arms, he would make peace with you.

NOTE. — The arms were to be given up *before* peace would be made.

424. Conditions Contrary to Fact

A condition in which something is assumed contrary to the fact, takes the subjunctive; the imperfect referring to the present or something continuing to present time, and the pluperfect referring to something finished in the past, as:

a **Sī dux adesset, exercitus nōn verērētur.**
If the leader were present, the army would not fear.

b. **Sī dux adfuisset, exercitus nōn superātus esset.**
If the leader had been present, the army would not have been defeated.

425. Summary of Conditions

I. Simple Conditions . . . take the indicative, in any tense required.

II.
a. Future more Vivid . . . indicative; future (or *future perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the future in the conclusion.

b. Future less Vivid . . . subjunctive; present (or *perfect* for *completed* action) in the condition, and the present in the conclusion.

III.
{
  a. Contrary to Fact, *present* . . . the imperfect subjunc-
                                  tive.
  b. Contrary to Fact, *past* . . . the pluperfect subjunctive.
}

Wishes

426. Clauses expressing a wish take the subjunctive, fre-
quently but not always introduced by **utinam,** *would that;* they
correspond exactly to conditions of the less vivid future (423, 2),
and to conditions contrary to fact (424), as:

1. **Utinam meus frāter veniat,** *O that my brother would come !*
   (423, 2.)

2. **Utinam meus frāter adesset,** *I wish that my brother were
   here* (424, *a.*)

3. **Utinam meus frāter adfuisset,** *would that my brother had
   been here !* (424, *b.*)

EXERCISES

427. 1. Sī vīs, potes. 2. Sī haec cīvitās est, cīvis sum.
3. Nisi imperātor aderat, lēgātus nōn saepe proelium com-
mittēbat. 4. Sī nēmō praetereā sequētur, cum sōlā decimā
legiōne ībō. 5. Sī mīlitēs vīcerint, laudābuntur. 6. Sī urbs
oppugnāta sit, cīvēs sē dēfendant. 7. Sī mīlitēs fortiter
pugnent, vincant. 8. Sī nōn dux abesset, fortius mīlitēs
pugnārent. 9. Utinam ille adesset! 10. Sī prīnceps coniū-
rātiōnis ex urbe exīsset, nōs salvī essēmus. 11. Utinam
exīsset et omnēs sēcum suōs ēdūxisset! 12. Ariovistus
dīxit: "In Galliam nōn vēnissem nisi rogātus essem ā
Gallīs. 13. Sī mihi bellum intuleris, mē dēfendam."
14. Caesar respondit: "Nōlī bellum Haeduīs sociīsque
eōrum īnferre; redde obsidēs quōs habēs; sī id ita fēceris,
mihi populōque Rōmānō amīcitia tēcum erit." 15. Sī Ario-
vistus id quod Caesar postulāverat fēcisset, Caesar pācem
cum eō fēcisset.

428. 1. If these brave soldiers fight, they conquer. 2. If they fought, they conquered. 3. If they should fight, they would conquer; if they should conquer, they would be praised. 4. If they had fought, they would have conquered. 5. O that they may conquer! 6. Would that they had conquered! 7. If you will go, I will go with you. 8. If you will return the hostages, I will not make war upon you. 9. If you should make war upon me, I should seize all your towns. 10. If our ancestors had not fought bravely, we should not now be free. 11. Would that all men were free!

GAIVS IVLIVS CAESAR

From the marble bust in the British Museum

SELECTIONS FOR READING

429.   THE KID AND THE WOLF

Haedus stāns in tēctō domūs [1] lupō [2] praetereuntī male-
dīxit. Cui lupus, " Nōn tū," inquit,[3] " sed tēctum mihi male-
dīxit." Saepe locus et tempus timidōs hominēs audācīs
reddit.

430.   IN UNION IS STRENGTH

Agricola senex, cum mortem sibi [4] adpropinquāre sen-
tīret,[5] fīliōs convocāvit, quōs interdum discordāre nōverat,[6]
et fascem virgulārum adferrī iubet. Quibus [7] adlātīs, fīliōs
hortātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod [7] cum facere nōn
possent, distribuit singulās virgās ; iīsque celeriter fractīs,
docuit fīliōs, quam [8] fīrma rēs esset concordia quamque
imbēcillis discordia.

431.   SOUR GRAPES

Vulpēs ūvam in vīte cōnspicāta ad illam subsiliit omnium
vīrium suārum contentiōne, sī [9] eam forte attingere posset.
Tandem dēfatīgāta inānī labōre discēdēns dīxit : " At nunc
etiam acerbae sunt, nec eās in viā repertās [10] tollerem." [11]

---

[1] 210, *b*.

[2] **lupō praetereuntī maledīxit,** *to a wolf passing by spoke ill = reviled
a wolf as he was passing by* (409, 410, 1).

[3] **inquit** = *said he,* used, as here, only in a direct quotation.   [4] 341.

[5] 279, 2.   [6] From **nōscō**   [7] 420, note 1.   [8] *how.*

[9] **sī** = *to see if.*   [10] **repertās,** *found = if they were found.*   [11] 424.

432.   THE OXEN

In eōdem prātō pāscēbantur trēs bovēs [1] in maximā con-
cordiā, et sīc ab omnī ferārum incursiōne tūtī erant. Sed
dissidiō inter illōs ortō,[2] singulī ā ferīs petītī et laniātī sunt.

Fābula docet quantum bonī [3] sit [4] in concordiā.

433.   THE TRUMPETER

Tubicen ab hostibus captus, "Nōlīte [5] mē," inquit, "in-
terficere; nam inermis sum, neque quidquam [6] habeō prae-
ter hanc tubam." At hostēs, "Propter hōc ipsum," inqui-
unt, "tē interimēmus, quod, cum ipse pugnandī [7] sīs [8]
imperītus, aliōs ad pugnam incitāre solēs."

Fābula docet nōn sōlum maleficōs esse pūniendōs sed
etiam eōs quī aliōs ad male faciendum irrītent.

434.   THE GOLDEN EGG

Mulier quaedam habēbat gallīnam, quae eī cotīdiē ōvum
pariēbat aureum. Hinc suspicārī [9] coepit illam [10] aurī mās-
sam intus celāre [10] et gallīnam occīdit. Sed nihil in eā rep-
perit nisi quod [11] in aliīs gallīnīs reperīrī solet. Itaque dum [12]
maiōribus dīvitiīs [13] inhiat etiam minōrēs perdidit.

435.   THE LION'S SHARE

Societātem iūnxerant leō, iuvenca, capra, ovis. Praedā
autem [14] quam cēperant in quattuor partīs dīvīsā, leō,
"Prīma," ait, "mea est; dēbētur enim haec praestantiae
meae. Tollam et secundam, quam merētur rōbur meum.

---

[1] From **bōs**.   [2] From **orior**.   [3] 188.   [4] 287   [5] 347.   [6] 402.
[7] 389, 390   [8] 279, 1.   [9] 303.   [10] *that she*, etc., 254, *b*; and 306.
[11] **nisi quod** = *except what*.   [12] 415, 1   [13] 341.
[14] The words **autem, enim, ferē, modo, quidem, quoque, vērō**, are
postpositive If they belong to a single word, they are put directly after that
word; if they belong to a phrase or clause, they come after the *first* word
(except a preposition) of that phrase or clause.

Tertiam vindicat sibi ēgregius labor meus. Quārtam quī sibi adrogāre voluerit, is sciat[1] sē habitūrum mē inimīcum sibi." Quid facerent imbēcillēs bēstiae? aut quae sibi leōnem īnfestum habēre vellet?

436.   BELLING THE CAT

Mūrēs aliquandō habuērunt cōnsilium, quō modo ā fēle cavērent.[2] Multīs aliīs propositīs, omnibus[3] placuit, ut eī tintinnābulum adnecterētur; sīc enim ipsōs sonitū admonitōs eam fugere posse.[4] Sed cum iam inter mūrīs quaererētur[5] quī fēlī tintinnābulum adnecteret, nēmō repertus est.

Fābula docet in suādendō[6] plūrimōs esse audācīs, in ipsō perīculō timidōs.

ROMÁN HISTORY

SATURNUS

437. Antīquissimīs temporibus Saturnus in Italiam vēnisse dīcitur, arma Iovis[7] fugiēns. Hanc regiōnem Latium vocāvit quoniam hīs in ōrīs tūtus latuisset Saturnus Italōs[8] prīmus agricultūram[8] docuit.

LATINUS AND AENEAS

438. Posteā Latīnus rēx fuit. Intereā Trōiā in Asiā captā ā Graecīs, Aenēās dux Trōiānus cum multīs sociīs in Italiam pervēnit, cui Latīnus fīliam Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dedit. Aenēās urbem condidit, quam ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium appellāvit.

---

[1] 397.   [2] 287.   [3] 360.
[4] **posse** is infinitive because it expresses the *thought* of all, as suggested by **omnibus placuit** (306).
[5] 279, 2; and 488, *b*.   [6] 318, *a*.
[7] **Iuppiter, Iovis,** *Jupiter*.   [8] 377.

ALBA LONGA

439. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, Aenēae fīlius, rēgnum accēpit. Hīc in monte Albānō urbem condidit quae Alba Longa appellāta est Silvius deinde rēgnāvit, Ascanī fīlius casū quōdam in silvīs nātus. Hōc cōgnōmen 5 rēgibus posteā omnibus mānsit, quī Albae[1] rēgnāvērunt. Tandem Silvius Procās duōs fīliōs relīquit, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Amūlius per dolum rēgnum obtinuit. Addit scelerī scelus : Numitōris fīlium interfēcit et fīliam, Rhēam Silviam, Vestālem virginem fēcit nē quem[2] fīlium relin-10 queret.

ROMULUS AND REMUS

440. Sed Rhēa Silvia ā Mārte geminōs fīliōs, Rōmulum et Remum, peperit.[3] Quod[4] ubi Amūlius cōgnōvit, māter in custōdiam datur, puerōs in Tiberim abicī iubet. Forte super rīpās Tiberis sē effūderat, et cum alveus, quō expositī 15 erant puerī, ad lītus fluitāsset, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō relīquit. Eōrum vagītum lupa, quae ad flūmen bibendī causā[5] vēnerat, audīvit et īnfantīs nūtrīvit. Faustulus pāstor quī puerōs invēnit eōs tulit in casam et coniugī dedit ēducandōs.

FOUNDING OF ROME, 753 B. C.

20 **441.** Puerī inter pāstōrēs adolēvērunt. Cum cōgnōvissent quis ipsōrum avus, quae māter fuisset, Amūlium interfēcē-runt et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum frātrēs in iīs locīs ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant urbem condidē-runt. Fāma est lūdicrō[6] frātris Remum novōs trānsiluisse 25 mūrōs, inde ab īrātō Rōmulō interfectum.[7] Ita sōlus potī-tus est imperiō[8] Rōmulus ; condita urbs conditōris nōmine appellāta est.

[1] 354.   [2] 403, 1.   [3] From **pariō**.   [4] 420, note 1.   [5] 367.
[6] 342.   [7] 323, n. 2.   [8] 366.

SEIZURE OF THE SABINE WOMEN

442. Rōmulus, ut cīvium numerum augēret, asȳlum aperuit ad quod multī ex cīvitātibus suīs pulsī vēnērunt Iam rēs Rōmāna erat valida; sed novae urbis cīvibus coniugēs deerant. Tum Rōmulus lēgātōs in vīcīnās gentīs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque peterent. Nusquam benīgnē lēgā- 5 tiō audīta est. Itaque Rōmulus lūdōs et spectāculum īnstituit. Multī studiō etiam videndae [1] novae urbis convēnērunt, maximē [2] Sabīnī cum līberīs ac coniugibus Ubi tempus spectāculī vēnit, signō datō, iuventūs Rōmāna virginēs rapuit.   10

WAR WITH THE SABINES

443. At raptārum [3] parentēs tum sordidā veste lacrimīsque cīvitātēs concitābant, quae statim bellum parant. Bellum maximum fuit ; nam Sabīnī callidissimī erant nec ostendērunt bellum priusquam intulērunt. Cōnsiliō etiam additus est dolus. Spurius Tarpēius Rōmānae praeerat 15 arcī.[4] Huius fīliam virginem aurō corrūpit dux ut armātōs [5] in arcem accipiat — aquam forte ea tum extrā moenia petītum [6] ierat. Illa petiit ut, quod in sinistrīs manibus habērent, sibi darent. Aureās enim [7] armillās magnī ponderis [8] gemmātōsque magnā speciē [9] ānulōs vīderat. At 20 hostēs in arcem ductī scūtīs Tarpēiam obruērunt; nam haec quoque [10] in sinistrīs manibus habēbant.

THE BATTLE, IN WHICH JUPITER STAYS THE FLIGHT OF THE ROMANS

444. Tenuēre [11] tamen arcem Sabīnī. Sed īra et cupiditās recuperandae arcis animōs Rōmānōrum stimulāvit. Prīnci-

---

[1] 318, *b* ; and 319.   [2] *mostly* (194).
[3] *of the seized* (maidens), p. 98, foot-note 1.   [4] 341
[5] *the armed* (men).   [6] 321.   [7] Foot-note 14, p. 172.
[8] 136.   [9] 392.   [10] *also.* Cf. 7.   [11] Perfect (98).

pēs utrimque pugnam ciēbant : ab [1] Sabīnīs Mettius Curtius,
ab Rōmānīs Hostius Hostīlius.   Mox Hostius cadit et
Rōmāna inclīnātur aciēs.   Rōmulus arma ad caelum tollēns,
" Juppiter," inquit, " pater deum [2] hominumque, arcē[3] hostīs
5 fugamque foedam siste.   Hīc ego tibi templum Statōrī Jovī
voveō."   Restitēre [4] Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce iussī.
At Mettius Curtius clāmābat, " Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs.
Iam sciunt aliud [5] esse virginēs rapere, aliud [5] pugnāre cum
virīs."   In eum haec [6] glōriantem [7] Rōmulus impetum facit.
10 Ex equō tum Mettius pellitur.   Pulsum [7] Rōmānī perse-
quuntur, et alia Rōmāna aciēs audāciā rēgis accēnsa fundit
Sabīnōs.   Miserrima fit caedēs.   Tum Sabīnae mulierēs sē
inter tēla volantia intulērunt hinc patrēs, hinc virōs, ōrantēs
nē sē sanguine socerī [8] generīque maculārent.   Movet rēs [9]
15 nunc multitūdinem, nunc ducēs.   Silentium et repentīna fit
quiēs.

TREATY WITH THE SABINES — INSTITUTIONS OF ROMULUS

445.   Inde ad foedus faciendum ducēs prōdeunt, nec pācem
modo sed cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt, atque impe-
rium omne cōnferunt Rōmam   Ut Sabīnīs tamen aliquid
20 darētur, cīvēs Quirītēs [10] ā Curibus, oppidō [11] Sabīnōrum,
appellātī sunt.   Centum ex seniōribus Rōmulus lēgit, quī
propter aetātem senātus [10] vocātī sunt.   Plēbem in cūriās trī-
gintā dīvīsit.   Eōdem tempore centuriae cōnscrīptae sunt.
Rōmulō [12] rēgnante Rōma domī mīlitiaeque tantum [13] valuit
25 ut quadrāgintā deinde annōs tūtam pācem habēret.

His rēbus [12] cōnfectīs, dum exercitum recēnset, subitō
coorta est tempestās cum magnō fragōre tonitribusque,

---

[1] **ab** = *on the side of.*   [2] **deum** for **deōrum** (457).
[3] From **arceō** (294, *a*).   [4] Perfect (98).
[5] *one thing . . . another thing* (200 and 201, *a*).   [6] 385, *b,* ⟨
[7] 409 ; 410, 1 and 2.   [8] *as fathers-in-law and sons-in-law.*
[9] **rēs,** *thing,* here means *the plea* (of the women).
[10] 84 and 85.   [11] 82 and 83.   [12] 334.   [13] 386.

et Rōmulus ē cōnspectū ablātus[1] est; eum ad deōs abisse volgō crēditum est; cui reī fidem fēcit Proculus, quī in contiōnem prōdit et dīxit Rōmulum caelō repente dēlapsum ita locūtum esse: "Abī,[2] nūntiā[2] Rōmānīs caelestēs ita velle ut mea Rōma caput[3] orbis terrārum[4] sit; proinde 5 rem mīlitārem colant[5] sciantque nūllās opēs hūmānās armīs[6] Rōmānīs resistere posse." "Haec," inquit, "locūtus sublīmis abiit." Ita Rōmulus prō deō cultus[7] et Quirīnus appellātus est.

REIGN OF NUMA POMPILIUS, B. C 715-672

446. Post ūnīus annī interrēgnum Numa Pompilius, vir 10 summā iūstitiā[8] et religiōne et cōnsultissimus omnis dīvīnī atque hūmānī iūris,[9] rēx creātus est. Curibus[10] habitābat. Cum Rōmam[11] vēnisset, ut ferōcem populum religiōne ac metū deōrum mītigāret, plūrima sacra īnstituit et sacerdōtēs suōs cuique[12] deōrum praefēcit. Āram Vestae cōn- 15 secrāvit et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum[13] virginibus dedit. Jovis sacerdōtem creāvit, īnsignīque eum veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Huic duōs flāminēs adiēcit, Mārtī ūnum, alterum Quirīnō. Sacerdōtēs duodecim Mārtī lēgit, quī caelestia arma, quae ancīlia appellantur, ferre per urbem canen- 20 tēs carmina solēbant. Pontificem deinde maximum lēgit, eīque omnia pūblica prīvātaque sacra attribuit, ut īdem pontifex deum cōnsuleret auguriīs quae suscipienda[14] essent. Iānum indicem pācis bellīque fēcit, apertus ut in armīs esse cīvitātem, clausus pācātōs omnīs populōs sīgnificāret. Bis 25 post Numae rēgnum clausus fuit, semel T. Manliō cōnsule

---

[1] From **auferō**   [2] 294, *a*   [3] 84 and 85.
[4] *circle of the lands = the world.*   [5] 397.   [6] 360.
[7] et connects **cultus** and **appellātus.**   [8] 392.   [9] 390.
[10] 352, *b*; and 354, 1.   [11] 354, 2.   [12] *to each one his own* or *special.*
[13] *he intrusted (gave) the fire to the virgins to be continually kept = he intrusted the keeping of the fire to,* etc.
[14] 312, *d*; and 313, 2.

post Pūnicum prīmum bellum, iterum imperātōre Caesare Augustō post proelium Actiacum.

Eā[1] pietāte omnibus pectora imbuerat ut fidēs ac iūs nōn minus quam poenārum metus cīvitātem regerent. Ita duo 5 rēgēs, alius[2] aliā viā, ille[3] bellō hīc pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā. Valida et bellī et pācis artibus[4] erat cīvitās.

REIGN OF TULLUS HOSTILIUS, 672–640 B C.

1. War between the Albans and Romans

447. Numae morte ad interrēgnum rēs rediit. Inde Tullum Hostīlium, cuius avus in clārā pugnā adversus Sabīnōs 10 fortissimē pugnāverat, rēgem populus creāvit. Hīc nōn sōlum proximō rēgī dissimilis sed ferōcior etiam quam Rōmulus fuit et undique māteriam excitandī bellī quaerēbat. Forte ēvēnit ut agrestēs Rōmānī ex Albānō agrō, Albānī ex Rōmānō, praedās agerent. Lēgātīs ad rēs repetendās 15 nēquīquam missīs, bellum utrimque summā ope parābātur. Albānī priōrēs ingentī exercitū in agrum Rōmānum fēcēre impetum. Interim Tullus audācter nocte in agrum Albānum iniit. Inde dux Albānus lēgātum praemissum[5] nūntiāre Tullō iubet, priusquam dīmicent, opus esse con- 20 loquiō.[6] Ita utrimque exercitūs ducēs in medium ad conloquium prōcēdunt Ibi īnfit Albānus: "Iniūriās et nōn redditās rēs et ego et tū, Tulle, causam huiusce[7] esse bellī vīdimus. Sed sī vēra dīcenda sunt, cupīdō imperī duōs cōgnātōs vīcīnōsque populōs ad arma stimulat. Itaque 25 ineāmus[8] aliquam viam quā[9] utrī utrīs imperent,[10] sine

---

[1] *that = such.*   [2] 201, *b.*   [3] 254, *a.*   [4] 158

[5] *he orders a messenger, sent ahead, to announce = he sends a messenger ahead and orders him to announce,* etc.

[6] 380.

[7] The appended -ce is often found with some form of **hīc,** as: **huiusce, hōsce,** etc.

[8] 397.   [9] 48.   [10] Connect this with **dēcernī** (287).

magnā clāde, sine multō sanguine, dēcernī possit. Utrimque
ratiō initur, cui fortūna ipsa praebuit māteriam.

2. The Horatii and Curiatii

Forte in duōbus tum exercitibus erant trigeminī frātrēs,
Horātii Cūriātiique. Cum trigeminīs agunt rēgēs ut prō
suā quisque patriā dīmicent ferrō. Priusquam dīmicārent 5
foedus ictum est eīs lēgibus, ut ibi imperium esset unde
victōria fuisset. Foedere ictō, trigeminī arma capiunt et
incitātī adhortantium [1] vocibus in medium [2] inter duās aciēs
prōcēdunt. Cōnsēderant utrimque prō castrīs duo exercitūs.
Signum datur īnfestīsque armīs ternī iuvenēs magnō animō 10
concurrunt. Ut prīmō concursū increpuēre arma micantēs-
que fulsēre gladiī, horror ingēns spectantīs perstringit.
Cōnsertīs deinde manibus duo Rōmānī super alium alius,
volnerātīs tribus Albānīs, exspīrantēs corruērunt. Ad quō-
rum [3] cāsum cum conclāmāsset gaudiō Albānus exercitus, 15
Rōmānae legiōnēs sine spē iam in ūnum oculōs convertēre
quem trēs Cūriātiī circumsteterant. Forte is integer fuit
et ferōx, sed ūniversīs sōlus nēquīquam pār. Itaque fugam
simulāvit ut singulōs intervallīs brevibus secūtūrōs adgre-
derētur. Iam aliquantum spatī ex eō locō ubi pugnātum 20
est aufūgerat, cum respiciēns videt ūnum haud procul ab
sēsē abesse. In [4] eum magnō impetū rediit et dum [5] Albā-
nus exercitus inclāmat Cūriātiīs utī opem ferant frātrī, iam
Horātius caesō hoste victor secundam pugnam petēbat.
Tum clāmōre faventium [6] adiūtus, priusquam tertius cōn- 25
sequī posset, et [7] alterum Cūriātium interficit. Iamque sin-
gulī [8] supererant, sed nec spē [9] nec vīribus parēs. Alter
integer est et geminātā victōriā [10] ferōx, alter volnere et
cursū cōnfectus est. Nec illud proelium fuit. Rōmānus

---

[1] by the cheers of (those) encouraging (foot-note 1, p 98) them.
[2] into the middle between = to a point halfway between   [3] 420, n 1
[4] upon.   [5] 415, 1.   [6] Cf. 1.   [7] also or even.
[8] singulī = one on each side.   [9] 158.   [10] 141

exsultāns illum male sustinentem arma necat et iacentem
spoliat. Rōmānī ovantēs ac grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt.
Ita exercitūs inde domōs abductī sunt. Prīnceps Horātius
ībat trigemina spolia prae sē gerēns.

3. Treachery of Fufetius in the War against Fidenae

5   Nōn diū pāx Albāna mānsit. Nam Mettius Fufetius, dux
Albānus, ā suō populō culpābātur quod tribus mīlitibus
fortūna pūblica commissa esset. Itaque, ut animōs volgī
conciliāret, causam bellī quaerēbat. Hōc per prōditiōnem
effēcit. Fīdēnātēs, colōniam Rōmānam, concitāvit ut arma
10 contrā Rōmānōs caperent et cum Vēientibus, quī Rōmānō-
rum hostēs erant, sē coniungerent, pollicitus cum cōpiīs suīs
eōs esse adiūtūrum. Cum Fīdēnae apertē dēfēcissent, Tullus
contrā hostīs exercitum dūcit Fufetius per speciem societā-
tis cōpiās suās cum Rōmānīs coniungit. Mettiō[1] nōn mul-
15 tum animī[2] erat. Ergō nec manēre cum Tullō ausus est
nec trānsīre apertē ad Fīdēnātēs. Cōnsilium erat fortū-
nam pugnae spectāre, et utrī vīcissent iīs addere sē socium.
Dum dubitat, sinistrum cornū cui praeerat inclīnāre coepit.
Inde Tullus in trepidā rē[3] spē simulātā clārā vōce equitēs
20 redīre ad proelium iubet. Terror ad hostīs trānsiit nec illī
tulēre impetum. Nōn alia ante Rōmāna pugna atrōcior
fuit. Posterō diē Fufetius atrōcissimō suppliciō interfectus
est et Alba propter prōditiōnem ducis penitus dēlēta est.

4. Growth of the City and Death of Tullus

Rōma interim crēscit Albae ruīnīs ;[4] duplicātur cīvium
25 numerus. Prīncipēs Albānōrum in patrēs,[5] ut ea quoque
pars reī pūblicae crēsceret, lēgit, cūriamque fēcit quae Hos-
tīlia appellāta est. Et, ut omnium ōrdinum vīribus aliquid ex
novō populō adicerētur, equitum turmās ex Albānīs lēgit.

---

[1] 93.   [2] *force of character, will, decision.*
[3] *in the critical situation.*   [4] 141.   [5] *senators.*

Hāc fidūciā vīrium Tullus Sabīnīs[1] bellum indīxit. Cum
bellum utrimque summā ope parārent, Tullus prior in
agrum Sabīnum trānsiit. Pugna ferōx fuit, ubi[2] equitātū
auctō nūper plūrimum[3] Rōmāna aciēs valuit. Victīs Sabī-
nīs, cum in magnā glōriā rēgnum Tullī ac tōta rēs Rōmāna   5
esset, nūntiātum rēgī patribusque est in monte Albānō
lapidibus[4] pluisse. Ab hōc prōdigiō novendiāle sacrum
pūblicē susceptum est. Haud ita multō[5] post pestilentiā
labōrātum est.[6] Unde[7] cum pigritia mīlitandī orerētur,[8]
nūlla tamen ab armīs quiēs dabātur ā bellicō rēge, quī salū-   10
briōra crēdēbat mīlitiae[9] quam domī[9] iuvenum corpora
esse, dōnec ipse quoque longinquō morbō est implicitus
Tum ita fractī sunt spīritūs illī ferōcēs ut animum sacrīs
atque omnibus magnīs parvīsque superstitiōnibus dēderet.
Trāditur rēgem īrā Iovis ictum fulmine cum domō cōnfla-   15
grāsse. Tullus magnā glōriā bellī rēgnāvit annōs duōs et
trīgintā.

REIGN OF ANCUS MARCIUS, B. C. 640-616

448. Tullō mortuō, Numae nepōtem Ancum Mārcium
rēgem populus creāvit. Ancus cupidus otī[10] erat et avī
mōrēs atque īnstitūta restituere parābat. Tum Latīnī, qui-   20
buscum,Tullō rēgnante, ictum foedus erat, sustulērunt ani-
mōs et incursiōnem in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt. Ancus,
priusquam eīs bellum indīceret, lēgātum mīsit, quī rēs
repeteret. Lēgātus, ubi ad fīnīs eōrum vēnit, unde[11] rēs re-
petuntur, capite vēlātō, ait : " Audī, Iuppiter ; audīte, fīnēs   25
huius populī. Ego sum pūblicus nūntius populī Rōmānī ;
verbīs meīs fidēs sit "[12] Inde lēgātus, quī fētiālis appellātur,

---

[1] 341.   [2] *when = in which*   [3] 386.
[4] 48.   [5] *not so very long afterwards* (180)
[6] *there was suffering from* (371, *b*) = *the people were afflicted with*
[7] *whence although = and although from this* (420, n. 1).   [8] 279.
[9] 354, 1.   [10] 390.   [11] *whence* (420, n. 5) = *from whom.*   [12] 397.

peragit postulāta. Sī nōn dēduntur[1] rēs, quās exposcit, hastam sanguineam in fīnīs hostium ēmittit Hōc modō bellum indictum est, mōremque eum posterī accēpērunt.

Lēgātō rēs repetentī Latīnī superbē respondērunt. Itaque
5 bellum eīs indictum est. Ancus exercitū novō cōnscrīptō profectus urbem Latīnōrum vī cēpit, secūtusque mōrem rēgum priōrum, quī rem Rōmānam auxerant hostibus[2] in cīvitātem accipiendīs,[2] multitūdinem omnem Rōmam trādūxit. Urbī montem Aventīnum adiūnxit. Iāniculum
10 quoque nōn sōlum mūrō[3] sed etiam ob commoditātem itineris ponte[3] Sublicio in Tiberī factō coniūnctum est. Nec urbs tantum hōc rēge[4] crēvit sed etiam ager fīnēsque. Rēgnāvit Ancus annōs quattuor et vīgintī, cuilibet[5] superiōrum[6] rēgum bellī pācisque et artibus[7] et glōriā pār.

REIGN OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS, B. C. 616–578

15 **449.** Ancō rēgnante Lūcius Tarquinius cum coniuge et fortūnīs omnibus Rōmam migrāvit. Ad Iāniculum forte ventum erat.[8] Ibi eī,[9] ut trāditum est,[10] carpentō sedentī[11] cum uxōre aquila dēmissa pilleum aufert, superque carpentum cum magnō clangōre volitāns rūrsus capitī aptē repōnit,
20 inde sublimis abit. Accēpit id augurium laeta[12] uxor perīta prōdigiōrum,[13] et alta spērāre virum[14] iubet. Hās spēs cōgitātiōnēsque sēcum portantēs urbem ingressī sunt. Ibi benīgnitāte ac comitāte amīcitiam rēgis sibi conciliāvit et tūtor etiam līberīs rēgis īnstitūtus est. Itaque cum comitia[15]
25 rēgī creandō fierent,[15] puerōs vēnātum[16] mīsit et scienter effēcit ut ipse cōnsēnsū populī rēx creārētur. Nec minus rēgnī[18] suī fīrmandī quam augendae reī[18] pūblicae memor

---

[1] 422   [2] 318, *b*; 319.   [3] 48.
[4] *he being king* (334) = *while he was king*, or *during his reign.*   [5] 402.
[6] *former.*   [7] 158.   [8] 371, *b.*   [9] **eī** = *from him.*
[10] *as has been handed down* (371, *b*) = *according to tradition.*
[11] *while sitting* (409, 410) *in his chariot.*
[12] *joyful* = *joyfully.*   [13] 390.   [14] *husband.*
[15] *when assemblies were formed* = *when meetings were being held.·*   [16] 321.

centum in patrēs lēgit. Bellum prīmum cum Latīnīs gessit, praedāque[1] inde[2] magnā potītus, lūdōs fēcit. Tum prīmo circō, quī nunc maximus dīcitur, dēsīgnātus locus est; deinde annuī mānsēre lūdī. Bellō Sabīnō cōnfectō Tarquinius prīmus triumphāns Rōmam rediit. Maiōre inde animō 5 pācis opera inchoāvit quam gesserat bella; nam mūrō lapideō urbem cingere parat, et īnfima urbis loca circā forum cloācīs siccat; et aedem Iovis in Capitōliō inchoāvit.

Eō tempore in rēgiā prōdigium vīsū[3] mīrābile fuit: puerō[4] dormientī, cui Serviō Tulliō fuit nōmen, caput[5] 10 ārsit Tum Tanaquil: "Scīre licet," inquit, "hunc[6] lūmen[7] quondam rēbus nostrīs adflīctīs futūrum[8] praesidiumque: proinde eum omnī indulgentiā nūtriāmus." Inde puer omnibus artibus puerīlibus ērūditus est. Iuvenis ēvāsit vērē indolis rēgiae, nec,[9] cum quaererētur gener 15 Tarquiniō, quisquam[9] Rōmānae iuventūtis ūllā arte cōnferrī potuit; fīliam eī suam rēx in mātrimōnium dedit. Duodēquadrāgēnsimō fermē annō ex quō rēgnāre coeperat Tarquinius, nōn apud rēgem modo sed apud patrēs plēbemque maximō honōre[10] Servius Tullius erat. Tum Ancī 20 fīliī duo, indīgnantēs quod patriō rēgnō tūtōris fraude pulsī essent, et veritī ut nē ab Tarquiniō quidem ad sē redīret rēgnum, rēgem in rēgiā occīdērunt. Clāmor inde subitō ortus est concursusque mīrantium[11] quid reī[12] esset. Tanaquil inter tumultum claudī rēgiam iubet. Cum clāmor impetusque multitūdinis vix sustinērī posset, ex superiōre 25 parte aedium per fenestrās populum adloquitur. Iubet bonō animō[10] esse: sōpītum fuisse[13] rēgem subitō ictū; ferrum haud altē in corpus dēscendisse;[13] paucīs diēbus ipsum

---

[1] 366.   [2] 420, n. 5.   [3] 321, 2.
[4] *to the boy sleeping = while the boy lay asleep.*   [5] *head = hair.*
[6] *this* (boy).   [7] 85.
[8] **futūrum** (323, n. 2; and 306) *is about to be = is destined to be.*
[9] 402, 403, 2.   [10] 392.   [11] *of* (those) *wondering.*
[12] *what of action* (188) *there was = what was going on* or *what the matter was.*
[13] 306, with note.

rēgem esse vīsūrōs ;[1] interim Servium Tullium rēgis mū-
nera obitūrum esse.[1] Servius cum lictōribus prōdit, ac sede
rēgiā sedēns alia[2] dēcernit, dē aliīs[2] cōnsultūrum sē rēgem
esse simulat. Itaque per aliquot diēs, cum iam exspīrāsset
5 Tarquinius, cēlātā morte suās opēs fīrmāvit Tum dēmum,
cum conplōrātiōne[3] in rēgiā ortā[4] mors patefacta esset,
Servius voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit. Ancī līberī iam tum
exsulātum[5] ierant.

450. Servius Tullius scienter ac bene imperium admini-
10 strāvit Nec iam pūblicīs magis cōnsiliīs quam prīvātīs sē
mūnīvit. Peropportūnē Vēientibus bellum indictum est. In
eō bellō et virtūs et fortūna ēnituit Tullī ; fūsōque ingentī
hostium exercitū summō cum honōre rediit, adgrediturque[6]
inde ad pācis maximum opus. Cēnsum enim īnstituit, rem
15 salūberrimam futūrō imperiō. Tum classīs centuriāsque ex
cēnsū discrīpsit. Prīma classis dīvīsa est in seniōrēs,quī ur-
bem custōdīrent ;[7] iuvenēs quī bella gererent. Mīlia LXXX
cīvium cēnsa[8] dīcuntur. Ad[9] eam multitūdinem urbs quoque
amplificanda erat. Addit duōs collīs, Quirīnālem Vīminā-
20 lemque. Aggere et fossīs et mūrō circumdat urbem. Simul
et aliquod addere urbī decus voluit. Iam tum erat inclitum
Diānae fānum. Id commūniter ā cīvitātibus Asiae factum
erat. Eum cōnsēnsum cīvitātum laudāvit Servius. Itaque
populīs Latīnīs persuāsit ut et ipsī[10] Rōmae fānum Diānae
25 cum populō Rōmānō facerent. Ea erat cōnfessiō caput
rērum[11] Rōmam esse dē quō totiēns armīs certātum erat.[12]
Servius Tullius duās fīliās, alteram ferōcem, alteram

---

[1] 306, with note.   [2] 201, *a*.   [3] 334.   [4] *having risen* (from orior).
[5] 321, 1.   [6] **adgreditur ad,** *turns to* or *begins*.   [7] 336.
[8] **cēnsa** (323, n 2) = *to have been enrolled*   [9] **for** = *to accommodate*.
[10] **et ipsī** = *they, too.*   [11] *the head of affairs* = *the mistress of the world*.
[12] 371, *b*.

mītem, habēbat. Duo quoque Tarquinī Prīscī fīliī longē dispārēs mōribus erant. Forte accidit ut Tullia ferōx Tarquiniō mītī nūberet ; Tullia mītis Tarquiniō ferōcī. Sed ferōx Tullia mītem virum mox dēspiciēbat et alterum Tarquinium mīrābātur. Ita Lūcius Tarquinius et Tullia minor, 5 cum morte domōs vacuās novō mātrimōniō fēcissent, iunguntur nūptiīs. Statim Tarquinius, quī posteā Superbus appellātus est, ā Tulliā incitātus, convocātō senātū rēgnum petere coepit. Quā rē audītā, Servius ad cūriam properāvit. "Quid hōc," inquit, "Tarquinī,[1] reī[2] est ? Quā tū audāciā 10 mē vīvō[3] vocāre ausus es[4] patrēs ?" Cum ille ferōciter respondisset, clāmor oritur et concursus populī fiēbat in cūriam. Tum Tarquinius vīribus validior arripit Servium, atque ē cūriā per[5] gradūs dēicit. Inde prope exsanguis fugiēns[6] interficitur. Tullia carpentō in forum invecta 15 ēvocāvit virum ē cūriā, rēgemque prīma appellāvit. Ā quō iussa ex tantō tumultū discēdere cum domum redīret, is quī carpentum agēbat subitō restitit pavidus iacentemque[7] Servium trucīdātum ostendit Foedum inhūmānumque inde trāditur scelus. Nam āmēns[8] Tullia per patris corpus 20 carpentum ēgit. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.

451. Ubi Tarquinius rēgnāre coepit, prīncipēs cīvitātis, quōs Serviō fāvisse crēdēbat, interfēcit et armātōs circum sē habēbat. Neque enim ad iūs rēgnī quicquam[9] praeter vim 25 habēbat quod neque populī iussū neque auctōritāte patrum

---

[1] 44, c.   [2] *what of business* (188) *is this ?* = *what does this mean ?*
[3] *me alive* = *while I am living* (334)   [4] 487.   [5] *down over.*
[6] *fleeing* = *attempting to flee.*
[7] **iacentem**, *lying* (dead) = *as he lay* (dead in the street)
[8] *out of her mind, frenzied, unnatural, cruel*
[9] *For not anything for the right of the throne had he* = *he had no right to*, etc.

rēgnābat. Itaque, cum in voluntāte cīvium nihil speī repō-
nere posset, metū [1] rēgnum retinuit atque imperium sine
cōnsiliō per sē sōlum exercēbat. Aliōs inimīcōs occīdit,
aliōs in exsilium ēgit. Mōrem senātum cōnsulendī solvit;
5 bellum, pācem, foedera, quibuscum voluit, fēcit. Latīnōrum
sibi maximē gentem conciliābat, ut peregrīnīs quoque opi-
bus [2] tūtior inter cīvīs esset; Mamiliō, prīncipī Latīnōrum,
fīliam nūptum [3] dat. Iam magna Tarquinī auctōritās inter
Latīnōs erat. Ita renovātum est id foedus, quō rēs omnis
10 Albāna cum colōniīs suīs in Rōmānum cessit imperium.

Cum iniūstus esset in pāce rēx, tamen dux bellī audāx
fuit; eā arte aequāsset [4] superiōrēs rēgēs, nisi dēgener in
aliīs fuisset. Is prīmus Volscīs bellum intulit Pōmētiamque
ex hīs vī cēpit. Captīvā praedā magnificum illum templum
15 Iovis inchoāvit. Deinde Gabiōs, propinquam urbem, nēquī-
quam vī adortus, fraude ac dolō adgressus est. Nam, cum
sē bellum pōnere [5] simulāret, Sextum fīlium Gabiōs mīsit.
Sextus benīgnē ab Gabīnīs excipitur, quod patris superbiae
vītandae causā sē vēnisse simulāvit. Ita Gabīnīs persuādet
20 ut bellum contrā rēgem redintegret et efficit ut ipse dux
bellī legātur. Tum sēcrētō nūntium Rōmam ad patrem
mittit rogātum quid sē facere vellet. Rēx in hortum am-
bulāvit sequente nūntiō fīlī; ibi tacitus summa papāverum
capita dicitur baculō dēcussisse, neque ūllam vōcem ēmis-
25 sisse. Nūntius Gabiōs rediit et quid vīdisset nūntiāvit.
Sextus, quid vellet parēns, intellēxit et multōs prīncipēs
cīvitātis interfēcit. Eōrum bona inter multitūdinem dīvīsit
Itaque largītiōne populus conciliātus est dōnec orba cōnsi-
liō [6] auxiliōque Gabīna rēs rēgī Rōmānō sine ūllā dīmicā-
30 tiōne trāditur.

Inde ad negōtia urbāna mentem convertit In perficiendō
templō Iovis summā pecūniā [7] atque operīs plēbis ūsus est.

Fabrōs ex Etrūriā arcessīvit. Forōs in circō fēcit cloācamque maximam, receptāculum omnium purgāmentōrum urbis sub terrā ēgit ; quibus duōbus operibus[1] vix quicquam novum adaequāre potest. Rēx Rōmānus iam magnificentiā pūblicōrum operum exhauriēbātur, atque ut praedā[2] potīrētur 5 Ardeam vī oppugnāvit. Hanc urbem dum oppugnat, negōtium[3] eī domī contrahitur. Nam eius fīlius Lucrētiae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātīnī, vim[4] fēcerat. Illa maesta[5] sē occīdit in cōnspectū virī patrisque, obtestāta eōs ut hanc iniūriam ulcīscerentur. Hanc ob causam et propter superbiam ipsīus 10 rēgis L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque cum incēnsō populō ēgērunt[6] ut imperium rēgī[7] abrogāret, exsulēsque[8] esse iubēret L. Tarquinium cum coniuge ac līberīs L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque et vīgintī. Ita Rōmae septem rēgēs rēgnāvērunt annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā 15 trēs Duo cōnsulēs inde creātī sunt, L. Jūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus.

[1] 341.   [2] 366.   [3] *trouble is heaped upon him.*
[4] *had done violence to*   [5] *sad = in grief.*
[6] *acted with . . . so that = prevailed upon . . to*
[7] The dative after a verb meaning *take away* may often be translated by *from*
[8] Plural because **Tarquinium cum coniuge** = *Tarquinius and his wife.*

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, ETC.

NOUNS

452. **NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION**

Stem in -ā-

	Singular	Terminations	Plural	Terminations
Nom.	puella	-a	puellae	-ae
Gen	puellae	-ae	puellārum	-ārum
Dat.	puellae	-ae	puellīs	-īs
Acc	puellam	-am	puellās	-ās
Abl.	puellā	-ā	puellīs	-īs

453. **NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION**

Stem in -o-

			Singular		Terminations Mas.	Terminations Neu.
Nom.	servus	fīlius	bellum	cōnsilium	-us	-um
Gen.	servī	fīlī	bellī	cōnsilī	-ī	-ī
Dat	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō
Acc.	servum	fīlium	bellum	cōnsilium	-um	-um
Abl.	servō	fīliō	bellō	cōnsiliō	-ō	-ō

			Plural			
Nom.	servī	fīliī	bella	cōnsilia	-ī	-a
Gen.	servōrum	fīliōrum	bellōrum	cōnsiliōrum	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs
Acc.	servōs	fīliōs	bella	cōnsilia	-ōs	-a
Abl.	servīs	fīliīs	bellīs	cōnsiliīs	-īs	-īs

a. The vocative singular of **servus** is **serve** ; of **fīlius** is **fīlī**.

Nouns in -er and -ir

	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	—
Gen	pueiī	agrī	virī	-ī
Dat.	pueiō	agrō	virō	-ō
Acc	pueıum	agrum	viıum	-um
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō

	PLURAL			
Nom.	puerī	agıī	virī	-ī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

454.   NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

a. Consonant Stems: Mutes

	SINGULAR				M AND F.	NEU
Nom.	rēx	mīles	prīnceps	caput	-s or —	—
Gen.	ıēgis	mīlitis	prīncipis	capitis	-is	-is
Dat.	rēgī	mīlitī	prīncipī	capitī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	rēgem	mīlitem	prīncipem	caput	-em	—
Abl.	rēge	mīlite	prīncipe	capite	-e	-e

	PLURAL					
Nom.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Gen.	rēgum	mīlitum	prīncipum	capitum	-um	-um
Dat.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs	prīncipēs	capita	-ēs	-a
Abl.	rēgibus	mīlitibus	prīncipibus	capitibus	-ibus	-ibus

b. Liquid Stems

	SINGULAR			
Nom.	cōnsul	legiō	homō	pater
Gen.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	hominis	patıis
Dat.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	hominī	patrī
Acc.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	hominem	patrem
Abl.	cōnsule	legiōne	homine	patre

Nom	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	hominum	patrum
Dat.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	hominēs	patrēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	hominibus	patribus

Neuters

SINGULAR

Nom.	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Gen.	nōminis	generis	corporis	itineris
Dat.	nōminī	generī	corporī	itinerī
Acc.	nōmen	genus	corpus	iter
Abl.	nōmine	genere	corpore	itinere

PLURAL

Nom.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Gen.	nōminum	generum	corporum	itinerum
Dat.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus
Acc.	nōmina	genera	corpora	itinera
Abl.	nōminibus	generibus	corporibus	itineribus

c. i-Stems

	SINGULAR				TERMINATIONS M AND F
Nom.	hostis	turris	vīs	imber	-is
Gen.	hostis	turris	vīs	imbris	-is
Dat.	hostī	turrī	vī	imbrī	-ī
Acc.	hostem	turrim, -em	vim	imbrem	-em, -im
Abl.	hoste	turrī, -e	vī	imbrī, -e	ī, -e

PLURAL

Nom.	hostēs	turrēs	vīrēs	imbrēs	-ēs
Gen	hostium	turrium	vīrium	imbrium	-ium
Dat.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus
Acc.	hostīs, -ēs	turrīs, -ēs	vīrīs, -ēs	imbrīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Abl.	hostibus	turribus	vīribus	imbribus	-ibus

Avis, cīvis, fīnis, nāvis, often have -ī in the ablative singular.

Neuters

		Singular		Terminations Neu.
Nom.	mare	animal	calcar	—
Gen.	maris	animālıs	calcārıs	-is
Dat	marī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
Acc.	mare	animal	calcar	—
Abl.	marī	anımālī	calcārī	-ī

		Plural		
Nom.	maria	animālia	calcāria	-ia
Gen.	marium[1]	animālium	calcārıum	-ium
Dat.	maribus	animālıbus	calcārıbus	-ibus
Acc.	maria	animālıa	calcārıa	-ia
Abl.	marıbus	animālıbus	calcārıbus	ıbus

d. Mixed i-Stems

Singular

Nom.	caedēs	arx	clēns	cīvitās
Gen.	caedis	arcis	clientis	cīvitātis
Dat.	caedī	arcī	clientī	cīvıtātī
Acc.	caedem	arcem	clientem	cīvitātem
Abl.	caede	arce	cliente	cīvıtāte

Plural

Nom.	caedēs	arcēs	clientēs	cīvitātēs
Gen.	caedium	arcium	clientium	cīvitātum (-ium)
Dat.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātibus
Acc.	caedīs, -ēs	arcīs, -ēs	clientīs, -ēs	cīvitātīs, -ēs
Abl.	caedibus	arcibus	clientibus	cīvitātıbus

455.   NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem in -u-

		Singular		Terminations M and F	Neu.
Nom.	manus	lacus	cornū	-us	-ū
Gen.	manūs	lacūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	manuī	lacuī	cornū	-uī	-ū
Acc.	manum	lacum	cornū	-um	-ū
Abl.	manū	lacū	cornū	-ū	-ū

[1] The genitive plural of **mare** is once written **marum**.

			PLURAL		TERMINATIONS	
					M AND F.	NEU
Nom.	manūs	lacūs	cornua		-ūs	-ua
Gen.	manuum	lacuum	cornuum		-uum	-uum
Dat.	manibus	lacubus	cornibus		-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus
Acc.	manūs	lacūs	cornua		-ūs	-ua
Abl.	manibus	lacubus	cornibus		-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus

456. NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem in -ē-

		SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS
Nom.	diēs	rēs	plānitiēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	reī	plānitiēī	-eī, -ēī
Dat.	diēī	reī	plānitiēī	-eī, -ēī
Acc.	diem	rem	plānitiem	-em
Abl.	diē	rē	plānitiē	-ē

		PLURAL		
Nom.	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum		-ērum
Dat	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus
Acc	diēs	rēs		-ēs
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus		-ēbus

457. Special Paradigms

		SINGULAR	
Nom.	deus	domus	Iuppiter
Gen.	deī	domūs, domī	Iovis
Dat.	deō	domuī, domō	Iovī
Acc.	deum	domum	Iovem
Abl.	deō	domō, domū	Iove

		PLURAL	
Nom.	deī (diī), dī	domūs	
Gen.	deōrum, deum	domuum (domōrum)	
Dat.	deīs (diīs), dīs	domibus	
Acc.	deōs	domōs, domūs	
Abl.	deīs (diīs), dīs	domibus	

458. ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MAS	FEM	NEU.
Nom.	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**
Gen.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dat.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Acc.	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**
Abl	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**

PLURAL

	MAS	FEM	NEU
Nom.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Gen.	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
Dat	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Acc.	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
Abl.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU
Nom.	miser	misera	miser**um**	aeger	aegra	aegr**um**
Gen.	miser**ī**	miser**ae**	miser**ī**	aegr**ī**	aegr**ae**	aegr**ī**
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

459. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

	MAS AND FEM	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU
Nom.	prūdēns	prūdēns	audā**x**	audā**x**
Gen.	prūdentis	prūdentis	audācis	audācis
Dat.	prūdentī	prūdentī	audācī	audācī
Acc.	prūdentem	prūdēns	audācem	audā**x**
Abl.	prūdentī	prūdentī	audācī	audācī

PLURAL

Nom.	prūdentēs	prūdentia	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	prūdentium	prūdentium	audācium	audācium
Dat.	prūdentibus	prūdentibus	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	prūdentīs, -ēs	prūdentia	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
Abl	prūdentibus	prūdentibus	audācibus	audācibus

SINGULAR

	MAS AND FEM	NEU	MAS. AND FEM	NEU.
Nom.	vetus	vetus	omnis	omne
Gen.	veteris	veteris	omnis	omnis
Dat.	veterī	veterī	omnī	omnī
Acc.	veterem	vetus	omnem	omne
Abl.	vetere	vetere	omnī	omnī

PLURAL

Nom.	veterēs	vetera	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	veterum	veterum	omnium	omnium
Dat.	veteribus	veteribus	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	veterēs	vetera	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
Abl.	veteribus	veteribus	omnibus	omnibus

SINGULAR

	MAS	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

Nom.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

460.   **PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE**

SINGULAR

	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.	MAS. AND FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	laudāns	laudāns	iēns	iēns
Gen.	laudantis	laudantis	euntis	euntis
Dat.	laudantī	laudantī	euntī	euntī
Acc.	laudantem	laudāns	euntem	iēns
Abl.	laudante	laudante	eunte	eunte

PLURAL

Nom.	laudantēs	laudantia	euntēs	euntia
Gen.	laudantium	laudantium	euntium	euntium
Dat.	laudantibus	laudantibus	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	laudantīs, -ēs	laudantia	euntīs, -ēs	euntia
Abl.	laudantibus	laudantium	euntibus	euntibus

461.   IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

SINGULAR

	MAS	FEM	NEU	MAS	FEM	NEU.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	neuter	neutra	neutrum
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	neutrīus	neutrīus	neutrīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	neutrī	neutrī	neutrī
Acc	alium	aliam	aliud	neutrum	neutram	neutrum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	neutrō	neutrā	neutrō

Plural is regular like **bonus** (458).   Plural is regular.

	MAS	FEM	NEU	MAS. AND FEM	NEU
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
Dat	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs, -īs	tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

462.   DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

SINGULAR

	MAS. AND FEM	NEU	MAS AND FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	altior	altius	——	plūs
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	——	plūris
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	——	——
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	——	plūs
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	——	plūre

Nom.	altiōrēs	altiōra	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	altiōrum	altiōrum	plūrium	plūrium
Dat	altiōribus	altiōribus	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra	plūrēs, -īs	plūra
Abl.	altiōribus	altiōribus	plūribus	plūribus

463. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	altior	altissimus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus
audāx	audācior	audācissimus
potēns	potentior	potentissimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus
aeger	aegrior	aegerrimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus
facilis	facilior	facillimus
difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
similis	similior	simillimus
dissimilis	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis	humilior	humillimus

464. *a.* Irregular Comparison

bonus, *good*	melior, *better*	optimus, *best*
malus, *bad*	peior, *worse*	pessimus, *worst*
magnus, *great*	maior, *greater*	maximus. *greatest*
parvus, *small*	minor, *less*	minimus, *least*
multus, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimus, *most*

b Adjectives with no Positive

[cis, citrā, adv , *on this side*]	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
[dē, prep., *down*]	dēterior, *lower, worse, inferior*	dēterrimus, *worst*
[in, intrā, prep., *in, within*]	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
[prae, prō, prep., *before*]	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*

| [prope, adv., *near*] | propior, *nearer* | proximus, *nearest, next, last* |
| [ultrā, adv., *beyond*] | ulterior, *farther* | ultimus, *farthest* |

Adjectives with Double Superlative

exterus, *outside*	exterior, *outer*	extrēmus extimus } *outermost, farthest*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus īmus } *lowest*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus postumus } *last*
superus, *above*	superior, *higher*	suprēmus summus } *highest, greatest (in excellence)*

ADVERBS

465.   COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

cārē	cārius	cārissimē
pulchrē	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

466.   ADVERBS FROM IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

bene, *well*	melius, *better*	optimē, *best, excellently*
male, *badly*	peius, *worse*	pessimē, *worst*
———	magis, *more, rather*	maximē. *most, mostly, chiefly*
parum, *little*	minus, *less*	minimē, *least, by no means*
multum, *much*	plūs, *more*	plūrimum, *the most, very much*
prope, *nearly, almost*	propius, *nearer*	proximē, *most nearly, last*

Adverbs not formed from Adjectives

| saepe, *often* | saepius, *more often* | saepissimē, *most often* |
| diū, *a long time* | diūtius, *longer* | diūtissimē, *very long* |

467. NUMERALS

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
1	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	I
2	duo, duae, duo	secundus *or* alter	II
3	trēs, tria	tertius	III
4	quattuor	quārtus	IV
5	quīnque	quīntus	V
6	sex	sextus	VI
7	septem	septimus	VII
8	octō	octāvus	VIII
9	novem	nōnus	IX
10	decem	decimus	X
11	ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12	duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13	tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII
14	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIV
15	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16	sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17	septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēnsimus	XVIII
19	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēnsimus	XIX
20	vīgintī	vīcēnsimus	XX
21	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēnsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēnsimus	XXI
22	vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī	vīcēnsimus secundus *or* alter et vīcēnsimus	XXII
28	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēnsimus	XXVIII
29	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēnsimus	XXIX
30	trīgintā	trīcēnsimus	XXX
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus	XL
50	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
80	octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	XC
100	· centum	centēnsimus	C
101	centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus	centēnsimus prīmus *or* centēnsimus et prīmus	CI

	Cardinals	Ordinals	Roman Numerals
200	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
300	trecentī	trecentēnsimus	CCC
400	quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC
500	quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus	D
600	sēscentī	sēscentēnsimus	DC
700	septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC
800	octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
900	nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC
1000	mīlle	mīllēnsimus	M
2000	duo mīlia	bis mīllēnsimus	
100000	centum mīlia	centiēns mīllēnsimus	

PRONOUNS

468.   PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	Sing	Plur.	Sing	Plur	Sing	Plur
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	——	——
Gen.	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

469.   DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Mas.	Fem	Neu.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM	NEU.	MAS	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Nom	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem / iīdem, īdem }	eaedem	·eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem / iīsdem }	eīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem / iīsdem }	eīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

470.   RELATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

471. ### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quis (quī)	(quae)	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	(cuius)	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	(cui)	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	(quam)	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	(quā)	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

472. ### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

SINGULAR

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

	MAS.	FEM.	NEU.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

REGULAR VERBS

473. FIRST CONJUGATION . ā-verbs

Laudō, *praise*

Principal parts: laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE	*Present*	PASSIVE VOICE

I praise, am praising, do praise   *I am praised, am being praised*

laudō	laudāmus	laudor	laudāmur
laudās	laudātis	laudāris (-re)	laudāminī
laudat	laudant	laudātur	laudantur

Imperfect

I praised, was praising, did praise   *I was praised, was being praised*

laudābam	laudābāmus	laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābās	laudābātis	laudābāris (-re)	laudābāminī
laudābat	laudābant	laudābātur	laudābantur

Future

I shall praise, etc.   *I shall be praised*

laudābō	laudābimus	laudābor	laudābimur
laudābis	laudābitis	laudāberis (-re)	laudābiminī
laudābit	laudābunt	laudābitur	laudābuntur

Perfect

I have praised, praised, did praise   *I have been praised, was praised*

laudāvī	laudāvimus		
laudāvistī	laudāvistis	laudātus $\begin{cases} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{cases}$	laudātī $\begin{cases} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{cases}$
laudāvit	laudāvērunt (-ēre)		

Pluperfect

I had praised   *I had been praised*

laudāveram	laudāverāmus		
laudāverās	laudāverātis	laudātus $\begin{cases} \text{eram} \\ \text{erās} \\ \text{erat} \end{cases}$	laudātī $\begin{cases} \text{erāmus} \\ \text{erātis} \\ \text{erant} \end{cases}$
laudāverat	laudāverant		

Future Perfect

I shall have praised		I shall have been praised	
laudāverō	laudāverimus	laudātus $\begin{cases} erō \\ eris \\ erit \end{cases}$	laudātī $\begin{cases} erimus \\ eritis \\ erunt \end{cases}$
laudāveris	laudāveritis		
laudāverit	laudāverint		

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

laudem	laudēmus	lauder	laudēmur
laudēs	laudētis	laudēris (-re)	laudēminī
laudet	laudent	laudētur	laudentur

Imperfect

laudārem	laudārēmus	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēs	laudārētis	laudārēris (-re)	laudārēminī
laudāret	laudārent	laudārētur	laudārentur

Perfect

laudāverim	laudāverimus	laudātus $\begin{cases} sim \\ sīs \\ sit \end{cases}$	laudātī $\begin{cases} sīmus \\ sītis \\ sint \end{cases}$
laudāveris	laudāveritis		
laudāverit	laudāverint		

Pluperfect

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus	laudātus $\begin{cases} essem \\ essēs \\ esset \end{cases}$	laudātī $\begin{cases} essēmus \\ essētis \\ essent \end{cases}$
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis		
laudāvisset	laudāvissent		

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

laudā, *praise thou*   laudāre, *be thou praised*

PLURAL

laudāte, *praise ye*   laudāminī, *be ye praised*

Future

SINGULAR

laudātō, *thou shalt praise*   laudātor, *thou shalt be praised*

laudātō, *he shall praise*   laudātor, *he shall be praised*

laudātōte, *ye shall praise* ——

laudantō, *they shall praise*   laudantor, *they shall be praised*

INFINITIVE

Pres. laudāre, *to praise*   laudārī, *to be praised*

Perf laudāvisse, *to have*   laudātus esse, *to have been*
    praised   *praised*

Fut. laudātūrus esse, *to be*   laudātum īrī. *to be about to be*
    about to praise   *praised*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. laudāns, *praising*   ——

Perf. ——   laudātus, *having been praised,*
                                              praised

Fut. laudātūrus, *about to praise*   laudandus,[1] *to be praised*

GERUND

Gen. laudandī, *of praising*

Dat. laudandō, *for praising*

Acc. laudandum, *praising*

Abl. laudandō, *by praising*

SUPINE

Acc. laudātum, *to praise*

Abl. laudātū, *to praise*

474.   **SYNOPSIS**

(A model for all regular verbs)

Laudō

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Pres.	laudō	laudor
Imperf.	laudābam	laudābar
Fut.	laudābō	laudābor
Perf.	laudāvī	laudātus sum
Plup.	laudāveram	laudātus eram
F. P.	laudāverō	laudātus erō

[1] Generally called the gerundive.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	laudem	lauder
Imperf.	laudārem	laudārer
Perf.	laudāverim	laudātus sim
Plup.	laudāvissem	laudātus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	laudā	laudāre
Fut.	laudātō	laudātor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudāre	laudārī
Perf.	laudāvisse	laudātus esse
Fut.	laudātūrus esse	laudātum īrī

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	laudāns	
Perf.		laudātus -
Fut.	laudātūrus	laudandus

GERUND

laudandī

SUPINE

laudātum

475.   Synopsis of the Periphrastic Conjugations

First, or Active, Periphrastic   Second, or Passive, Periphrastic

INDICATIVE

I am about to praise (just ready to praise, likely to praise, etc.)   *I am to be praised (must be praised, have to be praised, etc.)*

Pres.	laudātūrus sum	laudandus sum
Impf.	laudātūrus eram	laudandus eram
Fut.	laudātūrus erō	laudandus erō
Perf.	laudātūrus fuī	laudandus fuī
Plup.	laudātūrus fueram	laudandus fueram
F. P.	laudātūrus fuerō	laudandus fuerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	laudātūrus sim	laudandus sim	
Impf.	laudātūrus essem	laudandus essem	
Perf.	laudātūrus fuerim	laudandus fuerim	
Plup.	laudātūrus fuissem	laudandus fuissem	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	laudātūrus esse	laudandus esse
Perf.	laudātūrus fuisse	laudandus fuisse

So in the other conjugations :

monitūrus sum	monendus sum
rēctūrus sum	regendus sum
captūrus sum	capiendus sum
audītūrus sum	audiendus sum

476.   SECOND CONJUGATION : ē-verbs

Moneō, *advise*

Principal parts : **moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE	*Present*	PASSIVE VOICE

I advise, am advising, do advise   *I am advised, am being advised*

moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris (-re) .	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

Imperfect

I advised, was advising, did advise   *I was advised, was being advised*

monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (-re)	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

Future

I shall advise   *I shall be advised*

monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis (-re)	monēbiminī
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

Perfect

I have advised, advised, did advise   I have been advised, was advised

monuī	monuimus				
monuistī	monuistis	monitus	{ sum es est	monitī	{ sumus estis sunt
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)				

Pluperfect

I had advised   *I had been advised*

monueram	monuerāmus				
monuerās	monuerātis	monitus	{ eram erās erat	monitī	{ erāmus erātis erant
monuerat	monuerant				

Future Perfect

I shall have advised   *I shall have been advised*

monuerō	monuerimus				
monueris	monueritis	monitus	{ erō eris erit	monitī	{ erimus eritis erunt
monuerit	monuerint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

Imperfect

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

Perfect

monuerim	monuerimus				
monueris	monueritis	monitus	{ sim sīs sit	monitī	{ sīmus sītis sint
monuerit	monuerint				

Pluperfect

monuissem	monuissēmus				
monuissēs	monuissētis	monitus	{ essem essēs esset	monitī	{ essēmus essētis essent
monuisset	monuissent				

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

monē, *advise thou*   monēre, *be thou advised*

PLURAL

monēte, *advise ye*   monēminī, *be ye advised*

Future

SINGULAR

monētō, *thou shalt advise*   monētor, *thou shalt be advised*

monētō, *he shall advise*   monētor, *he shall be advised*

PLURAL

monētōte, *ye shall advise*   ——

monentō, *they shall advise*   monentor, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre, *to advise*   monērī, *to be advised*

Perf. monuisse, *to have advised*   monitus esse, *to have been advised*

Fut. monitūrus esse, *to be about to advise*   monitum īrī, *to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. monēns, *advising*   ——

Perf. ——   monitus, *having been advised, advised*

Fut. monitūrus, *about to advise*   monendus, *to be advised*

GERUND

Gen. monendī, *of advising*

Dat. monendō, *for advising*

Acc. monendum, *advising*

Abl. monendō, *by advising*

SUPINE

Acc. monitum, *to advise*

Abl. monitū, *to advise*

477.   THIRD CONJUGATION: ĕ-verbs

Regō, *rule*

Principal parts: regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus

INDICATIVE

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">ACTIVE VOICE</td><td align="center">*Present*</td><td colspan="2" align="center">PASSIVE VOICE</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">*I rule, am ruling, do rule*</td><td colspan="3" align="center">*I am ruled, am being ruled*</td></tr>
<tr><td>regō</td><td>regimus</td><td></td><td>regor</td><td>regimur</td></tr>
<tr><td>regis</td><td>regitis</td><td></td><td>regeris (-re)</td><td>regiminī</td></tr>
<tr><td>regit</td><td>regunt</td><td></td><td>regitur</td><td>reguntur</td></tr>
</table>

Imperfect

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">*I ruled, was ruling, did rule*</td><td colspan="2" align="center">*I was ruled, was being ruled*</td></tr>
<tr><td>regēbam</td><td>regēbāmus</td><td>regēbar</td><td>regēbāmur</td></tr>
<tr><td>regēbās</td><td>regēbātis</td><td>regēbāris (-re)</td><td>regēbāminī</td></tr>
<tr><td>regēbat</td><td>regēbant</td><td>regēbātur</td><td>regēbantur</td></tr>
</table>

Future

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">*I shall rule*</td><td colspan="2" align="center">*I shall be ruled*</td></tr>
<tr><td>regam</td><td>regēmus</td><td>regar</td><td>regēmur</td></tr>
<tr><td>regēs</td><td>regētis</td><td>regēris (-re)</td><td>regēminī</td></tr>
<tr><td>reget</td><td>regent</td><td>regētur</td><td>regentur</td></tr>
</table>

Perfect

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">*I have ruled, ruled, did rule*</td><td colspan="2" align="center">*I have been ruled, was ruled*</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxī</td><td>rēximus</td><td rowspan="3">rēctus</td><td>sum</td><td rowspan="3">rēctī</td><td>sumus</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxistī</td><td>rēxistis</td><td>es</td><td>estis</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxit</td><td>rēxērunt (-ēre)</td><td>est</td><td>sunt</td></tr>
</table>

Pluperfect

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">*I had ruled*</td><td colspan="2" align="center">*I had been ruled*</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxeram</td><td>rēxerāmus</td><td rowspan="3">rēctus</td><td>eram</td><td rowspan="3">rēctī</td><td>erāmus</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxerās</td><td>rēxerātis</td><td>erās</td><td>erātis</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxerat</td><td>rēxerant</td><td>erat</td><td>erant</td></tr>
</table>

Future Perfect

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2" align="center">*I shall have ruled*</td><td colspan="2" align="center">*I shall have been ruled*</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxerō</td><td>rēxerimus</td><td rowspan="3">rēctus</td><td>erō</td><td rowspan="3">rēctī</td><td>erimus</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxeris</td><td>rēxeritis</td><td>eris</td><td>eritis</td></tr>
<tr><td>rēxerit</td><td>rēxerint</td><td>erit</td><td>erunt</td></tr>
</table>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

regam	regāmus	regar	regāmur
regās	regātis	regāris (-re)	regāminī
regat	regant	regātur	regantur

Imperfect

regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris (-re)	regerēminī
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur

Perfect

rēxerim	rēxerimus		sim	sīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	rēctus	sīs	rēctī sītis
rēxerit	rēxerint		sit	sint

Pluperfect

rēxissem	rēxissēmus		essem	essēmus
rēxissēs	rēxissētis	rēctus	essēs	rēctī essētis
rēxisset	rēxissent		esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

rege, *rule thou*   regere, *be thou ruled*

PLURAL

regite, *rule ye*   regiminī, *be ye ruled*

Future

SINGULAR

regitō, *thou shalt rule*   regitor, *thou shalt be ruled*

regitō, *he shall rule*   regitor, *he shall be ruled*

PLURAL

regitōte, *ye shall rule*   ——————

reguntō, *they shall rule*   reguntor, *they shall be ruled*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	regere, *to rule*	regī, *to be ruled*
Perf.	rēxisse, *to have ruled*	rēctus esse, *to have been ruled*
Fut.	rēctūrus esse, *to be about to rule*	rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	regēns, *ruling*	————
Perf.	————	rēctus, *having been ruled, ruled*
Fut.	rēctūrus, *about to rule*	regendus, *to be ruled*

GERUND

Gen.	regendī, *of ruling*
Dat.	regendō, *for ruling*
Acc.	regendum, *ruling*
Abl.	regendō, *by ruling*

SUPINE

Acc.	rēctum, *to rule*
Abl.	rēctū, *to rule*

478.   THIRD CONJUGATION: verbs in **-iō**

Capiō : *take*

Principal parts : capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		*Present*	PASSIVE VOICE	
I take, am taking, do take			*I am taken, am being taken*	
capiō	capimus		capior	capimur
capis	capitis		caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt		capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect

I took, was taking, did take			*I was taken, was being taken*	
capiēbam	capiēbāmus		capiēbar	capiēbāmur
capiēbās	capiēbātis		capiēbāris (-re)	capiēbāminī
capiēbat	capiēbant		capiēbātur	capiēbantur

Future

I shall take		*I shall be taken*	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur

Perfect

I have taken, took, did take		*I have been taken, was taken*	
cēpī	cēpimus		
cēpistī	cēpistis	captus { sum / es / est }	captī { sumus / estis / sunt }
cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)		

Pluperfect

I had taken		*I had been taken*	
cēperam	cēperāmus		
cēperās	cēperātis	captus { eram / erās / erat }	captī { erāmus / erātis / erant }
cēperat	cēperant		

Future Perfect

cēperō	cēperimus		
cēperis	cēperitis	captus { erō / eris / erit }	captī { erimus / eritis / erunt }
cēperit	cēperint		

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāminī
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect

caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
caperēs	caperētis	caperēris (-re)	caperēminī
caperet	caperent	caperētur	caperentur

Perfect

cēperim	cēperimus		
cēperis	cēperitis	captus { sim / sīs / sit }	captī { sīmus / sītis / sint }
cēperit	cēperint		

Pluperfect

cēpissem	cēpissēmus		essem		essēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis	captus { essēs	captī { essētis
cēpisset	cēpissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

cape, *take thou*   capere, *be thou taken*

PLURAL

capite, *take ye*   capiminī, *be ye taken*

Future

SINGULAR

capitō, *thou shalt take*   capitor, *thou shalt be taken*
capitō, *he shall take*   capitor, *he shall be taken*

PLURAL

capitōte, *ye shall take*   ——
capiuntō, *they shall take*   capiuntor, *they shall be taken*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere, *to take*	capī, *to be taken*
Perf.	cēpisse, *to have taken*	captus esse, *to have been taken*
Fut.	captūrus esse, *to be about to take*	captum īrī, *to be about to be taken*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	capiēns, *taking*	——
Perf.	——	captus, *having been taken, taken*
Fut.	captūrus, *about to take*	capiendus, *to be taken*

GERUND

Gen.	capiendī, *of taking*
Dat.	capiendō, *for taking*
Acc.	capiendum, *taking*
Abl.	capiendō, *by taking*

SUPINE

Acc. captum, *to take*
Abl. captū, *to take*

479. FOURTH CONJUGATION: ī-verbs

Audiō, *hear*

Principal parts: audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE	*Present*	PASSIVE VOICE	

I hear, am hearing, do hear — *I am heard, am being heard*

audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris (-re)	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur

Imperfect

I heard, was hearing, did hear — *I was heard, was being heard*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (-re)	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Future

I shall hear — *I shall be heard*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (-re)	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

Perfect

I have heard, heard, did hear — *I have been heard, was heard*

audīvī	audīvimus				
audīvistī	audīvistis	audītus	{ sum, es, est }	audītī	{ sumus, estis, sunt }
audīvit	audīvērunt (-ēre)				

Pluperfect

I had heard — *I had been heard*

audīveram	audīverāmus				
audīverās	audīverātis	audītus	{ eram, erās, erat }	audītī	{ erāmus, erātis, erant }
audīverat	audīverant				

Future Perfect

I shall have heard		I shall have been heard		
audīverō	audīverimus	audītus { ciō / eris / erit	audītī { erimus / eritis / erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

Imperfect

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

Perfect

audīverim	audīverimus	audītus { sim / sīs / sit	audītī { sīmus / sītis / sint
audīveris	audīveritis		
audīverit	audīverint		

Pluperfect

audīvissem	audīvissēmus	audītus { essem / essēs / esset	audītī { essēmus / essētis / essent
audīvissēs	audīvissētis		
audīvisset	audīvissent		

IMPERATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

audī, *hear thou*   audīre, *be thou heard*

PLURAL

audīte, *hear ye*   audīminī, *be ye heard*

Future

SINGULAR

audītō, *thou shalt hear*   audītor, *thou shalt be heard*

audītō, *he shall hear*   audītor, *he shall be heard*

audītōte, *ye shall hear* ——
audiuntō, *they shall hear* audiuntor, *they shall be heard*

INFINITIVE

Pres. audīre, *to hear* audīrī, *to be heard*
Perf. audīvisse, *to have heard* audītus esse, *to have been heard*
Fut. audītūrus esse, *to be about to hear* audītum īrī, *to be about to be heard*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. audiēns, *hearing* ——
Perf. —— audītus, *having been heard, heard*
Fut. audītūrus, *about to hear* audiendus, *to be heard*

GERUND

Gen. audiendī, *of hearing*
Dat. audiendō, *for hearing*
Acc. audiendum, *hearing*
Abl. audiendō, *by hearing*

SUPINE

Acc. audītum, *to hear*
Abl. audītū, *to hear*

IRREGULAR VERBS

480. Sum, *I am*   **Possum,** *I am able, I can*   **Prōsum,** *I am helpful to.*

Principal parts {
  sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
  possum,[1] posse, potuī, ——
  prōsum,[2] prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus
}

[1] **Possum** is formed by uniting **potis**, *able*, and **sum**. From **potis** drop the ending -**is** and add **sum**. This gives **potsum**, then by assimilation **t** before **s** changes to **s**, making **possum**. Before a vowel the form **pot** does not change. In the perfect system the **f** is dropped, leaving **potuī** instead of **potfuī**. The infinitive shortens to **posse** for **potesse**

[2] **Prōsum** is **prō** and **sum** combined without change except that **d** is inserted when two vowels come together, as **prō** + **esse** becomes **prōdesse**.

INDICATIVE

Present

sum	possum	prōsum
es	potes	prōdes
est	potest	prōdest
sumus	possumus	prōsumus
estis	potestis	prōdestis
sunt	possunt	prōsunt

Imperfect

eram	poteram	prōderam
erās	poterās	prōderās
erat	poterat	prōderat
erāmus	poterāmus	prōderāmus
erātis	poterātis	prōderātis
erant	poterant	prōderant

Future

erō	poterō	prōderō
eris	poteris	prōderis
erit	poterit	prōderit
erimus	poterimus	prōderimus
eritis	poteritis	prōderitis
erunt	poterunt	prōderunt

Perfect

fuī	potuī	prōfuī
fuistī	potuistī	prōfuistī
fuit	potuit	prōfuit
fuimus	potuimus	prōfuimus
fuistis	potuistis	prōfuistis
fuērunt (-ēre)	potuērunt (-ēre)	prōfuērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect

fueram	potueram	prōfueram
fuerās	potuerās	prōfuerās
fuerat	potuerat	prōfuerat
fuerāmus	potuerāmus	prōfuerāmus
fuerātis	potuerātis	prōfuerātis
fuerant	potuerant	prōfuerant

Future Perfect

fuerō	potuerō	prōfuerō
fueris	potueris	prōfueris
fuerit	potuerit	prōfuerit
fuerimus	potuerimus	prōfuerimus
fueritis	potueritis	prōfueritis
fuerint	potuerint	prōfuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

sim	possim	prōsim
sīs	possīs	prōsīs
sit	possit	prōsit
sīmus	possīmus	prōsīmus
sītis	possītis	prōsītis
sint	possint	prōsint

Imperfect

essem	possem	prōdessem
essēs	possēs	prōdessēs
esset	posset	prōdesset
essēmus	possēmus	prōdessēmus
essētis	possētis	prōdessētis
essent	possent	prōdessent

Perfect

fuerim	potuerim	prōfuerim
fueris	potueris	prōfueris
fuerit	potuerit	prōfuerit
fuerimus	potuerimus	prōfuerimus
fueritis	potueritis	prōfueritis
fuerint	potuerint	prōfuerint

Pluperfect

fuissem	potuissem	prōfuissem
fuissēs	potuissēs	prōfuissēs
fuisset	potuisset	prōfuisset
fuissēmus	potuissēmus	prōfuissēmus
fuissētis	potuissētis	prōfuissētis
fuissent	potuissent	prōfuissent

IMPERATIVE

Present

	SINGULAR	
es	——	prōdes
este	PLURAL	prōdeste
	——	

Future

	SINGULAR	
estō	——	prōdestō
estō	——	prōdestō
	PLURAL	
estōte	——	prōdestōte
suntō	——	prōsuntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.	esse	posse	prōdesse
Perf.	fuisse	potuisse	prōfuisse
Fut.	futūrus esse [1]		prōfutūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

Fut.	futūrus		prōfutūrus

481. **Volō, nōlō, mālō**

Principal parts
$\begin{cases} \textbf{volō, velle, voluī, ——} \\ \textbf{nōlō,}^2 \textbf{ nōlle, nōluī, ——} \\ \textbf{mālō,}^3 \textbf{ mālle, māluī, ——} \end{cases}$

I am willing, I wish
I am unwilling
I wish rather, I prefer

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Impf.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam, -ēs, etc.	nōlam, -ēs, etc.	mālam, -ēs, etc.

[1] The form **fore** is often used in place of **futūrum esse**
[2] **Nōlō** is for **nōnvolō**, from **nōn**, *not*, and **volō**.
[3] **Mālō** is for **māvolō**, from **magis**, *rather*, and **volō**.

Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
	.		

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītıs	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Impf.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	——	nōlī	——
		nōlīte	
Fut.	——	nōlītō, etc.	——

INFINITIVE

| *Pres.* | velle | nōlle | mālle |
| *Perf.* | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

PARTICIPLE

| *Pres.* | volēns | nōlēns | —— |

482.   **Eō,** *go* : **adeō,** *go to, approach, visit*

Principal parts { **eō. īre, iī (īvī), itūrus**
{ **adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
Pres.	eō	īmus	adeor	adīmur
	īs	ītis	adīris (-re)	adīminī
	it	eunt	adītur	adeuntur

Impf.	ībam	adībar
Fut.	ībō	adībor
Perf.	iī	aditus sum
Plup.	ieıam	adıtus eram
F. P.	ierō	aditus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	eam	adear
Impf.	īrem	adīrer
Perf.	ierim	aditus sim
Plup.	īssem	aditus essem

IMPERATIVE

| *Pres.* | ī | adīre |
| *Fut.* | ītō | adītor |

INFINITIVE

Pres.	īre	adīrī
Perf.	īsse	aditus esse
Fut.	itūrus esse	aditum īrī

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	iēns, euntis (460)	
Perf.		aditus
Fut.	itūrus	adeundus

GERUND

eundī

SUPINE

itum

a. In the perfect **īvī** is generally contracted to **iī**, and the forms **iissem** and **iisse** to **īssem** and **īsse**.

b. The passive of **adeō** is given since the simple verb **eō** is intransitive and therefore has no passive, except a few impersonal forms (488, *b*).

c. Except in the present indicative, where most of the irregularities occur, the synopsis only is given. The pupil should be able to fill out all forms from the synopsis.

483.   **Ferō**, *bear, bring, endure*

Principal parts : **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE			PASSIVE VOICE	
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers [1]	fertis	ferris (-re)	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Impf.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Fut.	feram		ferar	
Perf.	tulī		lātus sum	
Plup.	tuleram		lātus eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	feram		ferar	
Impf.	ferrem		ferrer	
Perf.	tulerim		lātus sim	
Plup.	tulissem		lātus essem	

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fer [2]		ferre	
Fut.	fertō [3]		fertor	

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre		ferrī	
Perf.	tulisse		lātus esse	
Fut.	latūrus esse		lātum īrī	

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	ferēns			
Perf.			lātus	
Fut.	latūrus		ferendus	

GERUND

ferendī

SUPINE

lātum

[1] **Fers, fert**, etc., are for **feris, ferit**, with the vowel dropped.
[2] 295, 5, note.   [3] 294, *b*.

484. **Fīō** (passive of **faciō**), *be made, become, happen*

Principal parts : fīō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Pres.	fīō	(fīmus)	*Pres.*	fīam
	fīs	(fītis)	*Impf.*	fierem
	fit	fīunt	*Perf.*	factus sim
Impf.	fīēbam		*Plup.*	factus essem
Fut.	fīam			
Perf.	factus sum		IMPERATIVE	
Plup.	factus eram		*Present*	
F. P.	factus erō		(fī)	
			(fīte)	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES
Pres.	fierī	
Perf.	factus esse	factus
Fut.	factum īrī	faciendus

a. The verb **faciō**, *make*, is regular in the active, and in the perfect tenses of the passive. But **fīō**, *be made* or *become*, active in form but passive in meaning, is used in the present, imperfect, and future, as the passive of **faciō**. The forms in brackets are rarely used, and no future imperative is usually given.

DEPONENT VERBS

485. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings, except as follows :

a. Deponents have participles of both voices, as :

sequēns, *following*   secūtus, *having followed*
secūtūrus, *about to follow*   sequendus, *to be followed*

b. The future infinitive is active in form and meaning, as :

secūtūrus esse, *to be about to follow*

c. The gerund and supine are also active.

Principal parts
{ hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum, *exhort, urge*
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, *fear, dread*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*
potior, -īrī, potītus sum, *get control of*

486. Synopsis

INDICATIVE

Pres. hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
Impf. hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
Fut. hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
Perf hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
Plup. hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
F P. hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. horter	verear	sequar	potiar
Impf. hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
Perf. hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
Plup. hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
Fut. hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE

Pres. hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
Perf. hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
Fut. hortatūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres. hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
Fut. hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potitūrus
Perf. hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
Ger. hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

hortandī	verendī	sequendī	potiendī

SUPINE

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	potītum

487.   SEMI-DEPONENTS

A few verbs have the active forms in the present system and the passive forms in other tenses, thus:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*   **gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,** *rejoice*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust*   **soleō, -ēre, solitus sum,** *be wont to*

488.   IMPERSONAL VERBS

a. Some verbs are used only in the third person singular and the infinitive impersonally. They are called impersonal verbs, because they have no personal subject. The word *it* is generally used in English, as: **accidit,** *it happens.*

b. Intransitive verbs are sometimes used in the passive impersonally, as: **pugnābātur,** *it was being fought,* or *there was fighting,* etc. So in the periphrastic conjugations, as: **mihi pugnandum est,** *it is for me to be fought,* or *I must fight.*

489.   Synopsis

It is allowed	*It happens*	*It is fought, there is fighting,* etc.	*I must fight*
licet	accidit	pugnātur	mihi pugnandum est
licēbat	accidēbat	pugnābātur	pugnandum erat
licēbit	accidet	pugnābitur	pugnandum erit
licuit	accidit	pugnātum est	pugnandum fuit
licuerat	acciderat	pugnātum erat	pugnandum fuerat
licuerit	acciderit	pugnātum erit	pugnandum fuerit
liceat	accidat	pugnētur	pugnandum sit
licēret	accideret	pugnārētur	pugnandum esset
licuerit	acciderit	pugnātum sit	pugnandum fuerit
licuisset	accidisset	pugnātum esset	pugnandum fuisset
licēre	accidere	pugnārī	pugnandum esse
licuisse	accidisse	pugnātum esse	pugnandum fuisse
licitūrum esse		pugnātum īrī	

RULES OF SYNTAX

The numbers refer to paragraphs in the text.

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case, 29.

2. A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person, 31.

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb, 85.

4. An appositive is in the same case as the word it limits, 83.

5. An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun to which it belongs, 54.

6. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, 236.

7. The vocative is used in addressing a person, 47.

8. A noun, or pronoun, used to limit another, not meaning the same person or thing, is in the genitive case, 38.

9. The genitive is often used after a word expressing a part of something, 188.

10. A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the genitive to denote quality, 136.

11. Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt,* and their opposites, govern the genitive, 390.

12. The indirect object is in the dative, 40.

13. Adjectives meaning *near,* also *fit, friendly, pleasing, like,* and their opposites, take the dative, 264.

14. The dative may be used with **est, sunt,** etc., to denote the possessor (the thing possessed being the subject), 93.

15. The dative is used with **sum** and a few other verbs to show that for which a thing serves, 342.

16. The dative with the gerundive denotes the person who has the thing to do, 314.

17. Many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and a very few with **circum** and **con,** govern the dative, 341.

18. Most verbs meaning to *favor, help, please, trust,* and their contraries ; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon,* and *spare,* take the dative, 360.

19. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative, 30.

20. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching,* and some verbs of *demanding,* take two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing, 377.

21. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative, 221.

22. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative, 306.

23. The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition, 48.

24. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote manner, 119 with *a.*

25. The ablative with **cum** is used to denote accompaniment, 120 with *a.*

26. The ablative is used with **cum** after verbs of association and contention, 120, note.

27. The ablative is used to express cause, 141.

28. The personal agent with the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab,** 77.

29. After verbs denoting separation, privation, and want, the ablative is used, 379.

30. **Opus** and **ūsus,** meaning *need,* take the ablative, 380.

31. The ablative is used with the comparative without **quam,** 172.

32. The measure of difference is expressed by the ablative, 180.

33. The ablative of specification is used to tell in what respect a thing is true, 158.

34. A noun, with an adjective, may be used in the ablative to denote quality, 392.

35. The verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vēscor** take the ablative, 366.

36. A noun, or pronoun, with a participle or adjective agreeing with it, is often used independently in the ablative absolute, 334.

37. Time *when,* or *within which,* is expressed by the ablative, 219.

38. Place *where,* not including names of cities, is expressed by the ablative with **in**, place *to which* by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; place *from which* by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē, ē** (**ex**), 354 *a.*

39. With names of cities and **domus** and **rūs** —

    1. Place *where* is expressed by the locative, 354, 1.
    2. Place *to which* is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, 354, 2.
    3. Place *from which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, 354, 3.

40. The subjunctive with **ut,** negative **nē,** is used to express purpose, 273.

41. The subjunctive with **ut,** negative **ut nōn,** is used to express result, 281.

42. A relative clause denoting purpose takes the subjunctive, 336.

43. The verb in an indirect question is in the subjunctive mood, 287.

44. The verb in an indirect request is in the subjunctive mood, 399.

45. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse take the subjunctive, 384.

46. The subjunctive is used in exhortations, corresponding to the English *let*, 397.

47. **Cum**, *causal* or *concessive*, takes the subjunctive, 279, 1.

48. **Cum**, *temporal*, takes the subjunctive when it denotes the *circumstances* or *occasion* for some other action, 279, 2.

49. **Dum**, meaning *while*, regularly takes the present indicative, 415, 1.

50. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *as long as*, take the indicative, 415, 2.

51. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, take
   a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, 415, 3, *a*.
   b. The subjunctive to denote intention or expectancy, 415, 3, *b*.

52. **Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, take —
   a. The indicative to denote an actual fact, 416, *a*.
   b. The subjunctive to denote intention, expectancy, or prevention, 416, *b*.

53. **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, **ut**, *when, as, as soon as*; **simul āc**, *as soon as*, take the indicative (usually *perfect*), 419.

54. Simple conditions, nothing implied, take the indicative, in both clauses, 425, I.

55. Future conditions, more vivid, take the future (or future perfect) indicative in the condition, and the future indicative in the conclusion, 425, II, *a*.

56. Future conditions, less vivid, take the present (or perfect) subjunctive in the condition, and the present subjunctive in the conclusion, 425, II, *b*.

57. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunc-

tive for present or continued action, and the pluperfect for past
or completed action, 425, III.

58   Clauses expressing a wish in the indefinite future _____
the present subjunctive, 426.

59. Clauses expressing a wish unfulfilled in the present take
the imperfect subjunctive, 426.

60. Clauses expressing a wish referring to the past take the
pluperfect subjunctive, 426.

61. The infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of
another verb, 304

62. The infinitive with subject accusative is used after verbs,
and other expressions, of *knowing, thinking, saying,* and *perceiv-
ing,* 306.

63. The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to ex-
press purpose, 321, 1.

64. The supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives as an abla-
tive of specification, 321, 2.

For tenses of the subjunctive see 406.
For tenses of the infinitive see 409 and 411.
For tenses of the participle see 409 and 410.

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative
abs.	absolute.
acc.	accusative
act.	active
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb.
cf. (cōnfer)	compare.
comp.	comparative
conj.	conjunction.
dat.	dative.
def.	defective
deg	degree.
dep	deponent.
dem.	demonstrative
dis.	distributive
f, fem.	feminine
fut	future
gen.	genitive.
imperf.	imperfect
impers.	impersonal.
imp.	imperative.
ind.	indicative.
indecl.	indeclinable
indef.	indefinite
inf.	infinitive.
interrog.	interrogative
interj.	interjection.

intr.	intransitive
irr	irregular.
loc.	locative.
m., mas	masculine
n , neu	neuter.
neg.	negative.
nom.	nominative.
num	numeral.
ord.	ordinal.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
perf.	perfect
pers.	personal.
pl., plui.	plural
pluperf.	pluperfect
pos.	positive.
poss.	possessive.
prep.	preposition.
pres	present.
pron.	pronoun
refl.	reflexive.
rel.	relative.
sing.	singular.
subj.	subjunctive.
sup.	superlative.
tr.	transitive.
v.	verb.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The numbers refer to paragraphs in the text.

A

ā, or **ab,** prep. with abl., *by, from.*

ab-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead away.*

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go away, go from.*

ab-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ab-iaciō], *throw away, cast away, throw.*

ablātus, see **auferō.**

ab-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *abrogate, take away.*

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus [ab(s)-teneō], *hold back from, abstain.*

ab-sum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away from, be absent.*

ac, see **atque.**

accēnsus, -a, -um, *excited, aroused.*

ac-cidō, -ere, -cidī, —— [ad-cadō], *fall upon, fall out; accidit,* impers , *it happens.*

ac-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad-capiō], *take, accept, receive.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *accuse.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager, active.*

acerbus, -a, -um, *bitter, harsh.*

aciēs, -ēī [ācer], f., *edge, line* (of battle).

ācriter [ācer], adv , *sharply, fiercely.*

Actiacus, -a, -um, *of Actium*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward; near; for, for the purpose of;* as adv with numbers, *about, nearly.*

ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *add.*

ad-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to, win over, influence.*

ad-ferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātus, *bring to, bring.*

ad-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad-faciō], *make towards, cause, affect, afflict.*

ad-flīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *strike against, damage, afflict*

ad-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum [ad-gradior], *go against, attack; enter upon, begin.*

ad-hortor, -ārī, -tātus sum, *exhort, urge.*

ad-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [ad-iaciō], *throw upon, add to.*

aditus, -ūs [ad-eō], m., *approach, entrance.*

ad-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join to, unite.*

ad-iuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *give aid to, assist.*

ad-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, *speak to, address.*

ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *manage, attend to*

ad-moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *admonish, advise.*

ad-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move to* or *near, apply.*

ad-nectō, -ere, -nexuī, -nexus, *tie to, fasten.*

ad-olēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus, *grow up.* Cf. Eng. *adult.*

ad-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *arise, rise against, attack.*

ad-ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *furnish, adorn, equip, decorate.*

ad-propinquō, -āre, -avī, -ātus, *approach.*

ad-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask for, claim.*

adrogantia, -ae [ad-rogō], f., *arrogance, assumption, haughtiness.*

ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be present, help.*

adventus, -ūs [ad-veniō], m., *coming, arrival.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

aedēs, -is, f , *temple;* plur., *house.*

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj , *sick, weak*

aegrē, adv., *feebly, with difficulty, scarcely.*

Aenēās, -ae, m., *Aeneas.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *equal.*

aetās, -ātis, f., *age.*

ager, agrī, m , *field, land.*

agger, -eris, m , *mound, rampart.*

agmen, -inis [agō], n , (*the thing led*), *army, column, line* (of an army), **novissimum agmen,** *rear line, rear.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *lead, drive, take; treat, arrange, argue; run* (a sewer).

agrestis, -e [ager], *of the country, rustic.*

agricola, -ae [ager-colō], m., *tiller of the field, farmer.*

agricultūra, -ae, f., *cultivation of the field, agriculture.*

ait, from aiō, a defective verb, *he says, says he.*

āla, -ae, f , *wing.*

Alba Longa, -ae, f., *Alba Longa,* a legendary city built by Ascanius

Albānus, -a. -um, *of Alba, a citizen of Alba.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, *belonging to another, foreign, unfavorable.*

aliquandō, adv., *sometime.*

aliquantum, adv , *somewhat, considerable.*

aliquantus, -a, -um, *considerable, quite large.*

aliquis, -qua, -quid (402), indef. pron , *some one.*

aliquot, indecl adj., *several.*

alius, -a, -ud, *another.* (See 200.)

alō, -ere, aluī, altus, *foster, support, keep, tend.*

altē [altus], adv., *high, deep, deeply.*

alter, altera, alterum, *the other.* (See 200.)

altus, -a, -um, *high, tall; deep.*

alveus, -ī, m , *tub, basket, tray.*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *walk.*

āmēns, āmentis [ā-mēns], adj., *without reason, rash, frenzied, excited.*

amīcitia, -ae [amīcus], f., *friendship.*

amīcus, -a, -um [amō], *friendly.*

amīcus, -ī, m , *friend.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *love*

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enlarge, increase.*

Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius,* king at Alba.

ancīle, -is, n , *shield.*

Ancus Mārtius, -ī, m., *Ancus Martius.*

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*

animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus [animus-advertō], *turn the mind to, notice;* with **in,** *take action against, punish.*

animal, -ālis, n., *animal.*

animus, -ī, m., *mind, feeling, will, resolution, spirit*

annus, -ī, m., *year.*

annuus, -a, -um, *annual, yearly.*

ante, adv., or prep. with acc., *before.*

ante-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *place before, put before, prefer.*

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient.*

ānulus, -ī, m , *ring*

aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus, *uncover, disclose, reveal, make known.*

apertē [apertus], adv., *openly.*

apertus, -a, -um, *open, plain, uncovered, unprotected.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, name*

Aprīlis, -e, *of April, April.*

aptē, adv., *skilfully.*

apud, prep. with acc , *with, among, in the presence of.*

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquila, -ae, f , *eagle.*

Aquilēia, -ae, f , *Aquileia,* a town in Gaul.

Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania,* a district of Gaul.

āra, -ae, f., *altar.*

Arar, Araris, acc. Ararim, m., a river of Gaul, the modern Saône.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think,*

arceō, -ēre, arcuī, arctus, *keep off.*

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *send for.*

Ardea, -ae, f , *Ardea,* a city

ārdēscō, -ere, ārsī, ——, *take fire, blaze, burn.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m., *Ariovistus,* a German chief.

arma, -ōrum, plur., n., *arms.*

armilla, -ae, f., *bracelet.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arm.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plow.*

ar-ripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus [adrapiō], *seize.*

ars, artis, f., *art, skill.*

arx, arcis, f., *citadel.*

ascendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *ascend, climb.*

ascēnsus, -ūs [ascendō], m., *ascent.*

Asia, -ae, f., *Asia.*

asper, -era, -erum, *rough.*

asȳlum, -ī, n , *asylum.*

at, conj , *but*

atque (generally ac before a consonant), *and.*

attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus [adtangō], *touch, reach to, border on.*

atrōx, atrōcis, adj , *fierce, cruel.*

attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *assign, give over to.*

auctōritās, -ātis, f , *influence, prestige, authority.*

audācia, -ae [audāx], f , *boldness, courage, daring.*

audācter [audāx], adv., *boldly.*

audāx, -ācis [audeō], adj., *daring, bold, brave.*

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum (487), *dare.*

au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab-ferō], *carry away, take off.*

au-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ab-fugiō], *flee away, escape.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.*

augurium, -ī, n , *augury, omen, divination, interpretation of omens.*

aureus, -a, -um [aurum], *of gold, golden.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

autem, conj., postpositive (435, n. 14), *but, on the other hand.*

auxilium, -ī, n., *aid, help;* plur., *auxiliaries.*

Aventīnus, -ī, m., *the Aventine,* one of the seven hills of Rome.

ā-vertō, -ere, āvertī, āversus, *turn, turn away.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*

B

baculum, -ī, n., *a staff.*

Belgae, -ārum, plur., m., *the Belgae* or *the Belgians,* a tribe of Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], *warlike, fond of war.*

bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], *pertaining to war, military.*

bellum, -ī, n., *war.*

bene [bonus], adv., *well.*

benīgnē, adv , *kindly, courteously*

benīgnitās, -ātis, f., *kindness.*

bēstia, -ae, f., *a beast.*

bibō, -ere, bıbī, ——, *drink*

bipartītō, adv , *in two divisions.*

bis, adv., *twice*

bona, n., plur. of bonus, *good things; goods, property.*

bōs, bovis (gen. plur. bovum or boum, dat. bōbus or būbus), m. or f., *ox, cow.*

brevis, -e, *brief, short.*

C

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall.*

caedēs, -is [caedō], f , *slaughter*

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut; kill*

caelestis, -e, *celestıal, heavenly, of heaven;* caelestēs, plur., *the gods.*

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens.*

Caesar, -aris, m , *Caesar.*

calamitās, -ātis, f., *disaster, defeat, calamity.*

calcar, -āris, n., *spur.*

callidus, -a, -um, *shrewd, experienced*

canō, -ere, cecinī, ——, *sing, chant, predict, foretell.*

caper, -prī, m., *goat.*

Capitōlium, -ī, n , *the Capitol* (at Rome).

capra, -ae, f , *goat, she-goat.*

captīvus, -ī, m., *captıve.*

caput, capıtis, n., *head, capital* (city).

carmen, -inis, n., *song*

carpentum, -ī, n , *chariot.*

carrus, -ī, m , *wagon.*

casa, -ae, f , *hut.*

castellum, -ī, n., *fortress.*

Casticus, -ī, m., *Casticus,* a leader of the Sequani in Gaul.

castra, -ōrum, n., plur., *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., *fall, chance, accident, misfortune.*

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason;* causā (after a genitive), *for the sake oj.*

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *guard against, be on one's guard, avoid.*

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, *withdraw, yield, surrender.*

celer, celeris, celere, *swift, quick.*

celeritās, -ātis [celer], f , *swiftness.*

celeriter [celer], adv , *swiftly.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conceal.*

Celtae, -ārum, m., *the Celts,* inhabiting a part of Gaul.

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *enumerate, reckon, think, propose.*

cēnsus, -ūs [cēnseō], m , *census, lıst.*

centum, indecl. num. adj , *hundred.*

centuria, -ae, f., *a century,* a division of a hundred people.

certē [certus], adv , *certainly.*

certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *contend, strive.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Cicero,* the famous orator at Rome.

cieō, -ēre, cīvī, citus, *incite, urge on.*

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround.*

circā, prep. and adv , *around, about.*

circiter, adv., *about, nearly.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around.*

circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *place around, surround.*

circum-sistō, -ere, -stetī, ——, *stand around, surround.*

circus, -ī, m., *circle, race-course, ring;* Circus Maximus, the *Circus Maximus* at Rome, with room for a hundred thousand spectators.

citerior, -ius, adj., comp., *hither, nearer* (186, 1).

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side.*

cīvis, -is, m. or f., *citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis [cīvis], f., *citizenship*

clādēs, -is, f , *slaughter.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *shout*

clāmor, -ōris, m , *shout, cry, clamor*

clangor, -ōris, m., *noise, uproar.*

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, famous, loud* (noise).

classis, -is, f., *class* (of people), *fleet* (of ships).

claudō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *close, shut.*

cliēns, -tis, m., *client, vassal.*

cloāca, -ae, f., *sewer, drain.*

coepī, -isse, coeptus (not found in the present system, 99, b), *began*

coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *restrain.*

cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f , *thought, meditation.*

cōgnātus, -a, -um, *kindred, related.*

cōgnōmen, -inis [cōgnōscō], n., *surname, name.*

cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *learn;* cōgnōvī, *I have learned or I know.*

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort,* a division of the legion.

co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *exhort, urge.*

Collatīnus, -ī, m., *Collatinus.*

collis, -is, m , *hill.*

colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate, cherish, worship.*

colōnia, -ae [colōnus], f., *colony.*

colōnus, -ī [colō], m., *tiller* (of the soil), *settler, colonist.*

comitās, -ātis, f., *courtesy, friendliness.*

comitium, -ī, n , *the comitium,* a place of assembly; plur., *assembly, the comitia.*

com-memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *mention.*

com-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *commit, intrust ; commence* (battle).

commoditās, -ātis, f., *convenience.*

com-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move, move greatly, disturb, alarm.*

commūniter, adv., *in common.*

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f , *a change.*

com-parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *get together, compare.*

com-periō, -īre, comperī, compertus, *find out, discover, learn.*

com-probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *approve, commend.*

con-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, *yield, give up to, grant.*

con-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [caedō], *cut down, kill.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *win, conciliate.*

concilium, -ī, n., *council.*

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *arouse, excite.*

con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out, shout, exclaim.*

concordia, -ae, f., *harmony, concord.*

con-currō, -ere, -currī (or -cucurrī), -cursūrus, *rush together, charge*

concursus, -ūs [con-currō], m., *rush, charge, meeting.*

conditor, -ōris [condō], m., *founder.*

condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, *found.*

con-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together, lead, conduct.*

cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring together, compare, bring, transfer.*

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f , *confession.*

cōn-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [conficiō], *complete, finish, wear out, exhaust.*

cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fīrmus], *strengthen, confirm, assure.*

con-flagrō, -are, -āvi, -ātus, *burn, be consumed.*

con-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw, hurl.*

con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join together, unite*

coniūnx, -iugis [coniungō], m and f, (a married person), *husband, wife.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., *conspiracy*

con-locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *place, station.*

conloquium, -ī [conloquor], n., *conference, conversation.*

con-loquor, -ī, -locūtus sum, *talk together, confer*

conplōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *wailing.*

cōn-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *write* (names) *together, enroll, enlist.*

cōn-secrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sacer], *consecrate.*

cōn-sequor, -ī, -cūtus sum, *follow.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., *agreement, harmony, consent.*

cōnsertus, -a, -um, *joined, united* (in battle).

cōn-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save, preserve.*

cōn-sīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *sit down, settle, encamp.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan, advice, discretion; council.*

cōn-sōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *console, cheer.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *catch sight of, see.*

cōnstat, -āre, impers., *it is evident, it is agreed.*

cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō], *erect, station, arrange, determine.*

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, *become accustomed;* cōnsuēvī, *I have become accustomed, or am accustomed.*

cōnsul, -is, m., *consul.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, *consult*

cōnsultus, -a, -um, *wise, learned, experienced.*

cōn-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *consume*

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *contend, strive, hasten, hurry on*

contentiō, -ōnis [contendō], f., *effort, exertion.*

contentus, -a, -um, *contented*

con-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [teneō], *hold, restrain, hem in, bound*

continenter, adv., *continually.*

contiō, -ōnis, f, *assembly, meeting, speech.*

con-trahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, *bring together, heap upon, bring upon.*

cōnūbium, -ī, n., *marriage, wedlock*

con-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come together, meet.*

conventus, -ūs [con-veniō], m., *meeting, assembly, agreement*

con-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, *turn.*

con-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon.*

co-orior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *arise, spring up, break out*

cōpia, -ae, f, *supply, abundance;* plur., *forces, troops.*

cornū, -ūs, n, *horn, wing* (of army).

corpus, -oris, n., *body.*

cor-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *corrupt, bribe.*

cor-ruō, -ere, -uī, ——, *fall.*

cotīdiē, adv., *daily.*

Crassus, -ī, m., *Crassus,* one of Caesar's officers in Gaul.

crēber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, repeated.*

crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus, *trust to, trust, believe.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *create, elect.*

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *increase, grow larger.*

crūdēliter, adv , *cruelly.*

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *blame.*

cum, prep. with abl , *with.*

cum, conj., *when; since, as; although.*

cupidē [cupidus], adv , *eagerly.*

cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., *eagerness, desire.*

cupīdō, -inis, f., *eagerness.*

cupidus, -a, -um [cupiō], *eager, desirous.*

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire, wish, long for.*

cūr, adv , *why.*

Curēs, -ium, plur., f., *Cures,* the chief town of the Sabines.

cūria, -ae, f., *senate-house;* cūriae, plur., *curiae, companies, divisions* (of the early Romans).

Cūriātiī, -ōrum, m., *the Curiatii,* the three brothers who fought with the three Horatii.

cursus, -ūs [currō], m., *running, course, speed.*

curūlis, -e, *official;* sella curūlis, the *official* or *curule chair.*

custōdia, -ae [custōs], f , *guard, watch, protection, care.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [custōs], *watch, guard, protect.*

custōs, -ōdis, m., *watch, guard, keeper, protector.*

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *condemn.*

dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning, for, with reference to; from, down from.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, *owe, ought, is due.*

decem, num. adj., *ten.*

dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, *decide, decree, determine.*

decimus, -a, -um, num adj., *tenth.*

decus, -oris, n., *beauty, honor.*

dē-cutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, *strike off.*

dēditiō, -ōnis [dēdō], f., *surrender.*

dē-dō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, *give over;* with sē, *surrender.*

dēfatīgātus, -a, -um, *wearied.*

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *defend.*

dē-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō] · *fail, revolt.*

dēgener, -eris, adj., *unworthy, degenerate.*

dē-iciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus [iaciō], *throw down, cast down;* dēiectus, *disappointed.*

deinde, adv., *then, next, thereafter.*

dē-lābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, *glide down, descend.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy*

dē-līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *deliberate, consider.*

dē-ligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus [dē-legō], *select, choose.*

dēmissus, -a, -um, *sent down, let down, swooping down.*

dēmum, adv , *at last.*

dēprecātor, -ōris, m., *mediator.*

dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *descend, plunge.*

dē-sīgnō, -āre, āvī, -ātus, *designate, indicate.*

dē-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *look down upon, despise.*

dē-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be wanting, fail.*

dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī. -itus, *frighten from, deter, hinder.*

deus, -ī, m., *a god.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.*

Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana,* a goddess.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak.*

difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*

dīligenter [dīligēns], adv , *carefully, attentively*.

dīligentia, -ae [dīligēns], f., *carefulness, earnestness, diligence*.

dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *esteem*.

dīmicātiō, -ōnis [dīmicō], f., *fight, struggle, contest*.

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight, contend*.

dis-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *withdraw*

discō, -ere, dıdicī, discitūrus, *learn*

discordia, -ae, f , *dıscord, dissension*

discordō, -āre, ——, ——, *disagree, quarrel*.

discrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *designate, form*.

dis-pār, -is, *unequal, ill-matched*.

dissidium, -ī, n., *dissension*.

dis-similis, -e, *dissimilar, unlike*.

dis-tribuō, -ere, uī, -ūtus, *distribute, assign, turn over to*.

diū, adv., *for a long time, long*

dīves, -itis, adj., *rich*.

Dīviciācus, -ī, m., *Diviciacus*, leader among the Haedui in Gaul.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., *Divico*, a leader among the Helvetii in Gaul.

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, *divide*.

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *divine*.

dīvitiae, -ārum, f , plur., *riches*

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *give*.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tus, *teach, show*.

doleō, -ēre, -uī, dolitūrus, *grieve*

dolor, -ōris [doleō], m , *grief*.

dolus, -ī, m., *deceit, trick*.

dominus, -ī, m , *mastei, owner*.

domus, -ūs or -ī, f. (210, *b*, *c*), *house*.

dōnec, *conj , until*.

dōnum, -ī, n., *gift*.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *sleep*.

dubitātiō, -ōnis [dubitō], f., *doubt, hesitation*.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *doubt, hesitate*.

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful, uncertaın*.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj , *two hundred*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, draw*.

dum, conj , *as long as, while, until*.

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., *Dumnorıx*, a Haeduan nobleman, brother of Diviciacus

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj , *two*.

duodecim, num adj , *twelve*.

duodēquadrāgēnsimus, -a, -um, num. ord. adj , *thuty-eighth*.

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *double*.

dux, ducis, m. or f., *leader*.

E

ē, see **ex**.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring up, educate*.

ē-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out, draw out, take away*.

ef-ferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex-ferō], *bring out, carry out*.

ef-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex-faciō], *bring about, cause, make* (something) *be*.

ef-fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex-fugiō], *flee from, escape*.

ef-fundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus [ex-fundō], *pour out;* sē effundere, *to overflow*.

ēgregius, -a, -um, *extraordinary, excellent*.

ē-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send out, throw;* vōcem ēmittō, *utter a sound*.

enim, conj., postpositive (435, n. 14), *for*.

ē-niteō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *shine forth, be conspicuous*.

ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report*.

eō, īre, īvī or iī, itūrus, *go*.

eō, adv , *to that place, there.*

epistula, -ae, f , *letter.*

eques, -ıtis [equus], m., *horseman, knight;* plur , *cavalry*

equitātus, -ūs [eques], m. (*body of horsemen*), *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m , *horse.*

ergō, adv , *therefore, then.*

ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *teach, instruct, educate.*

et, conj., *and ;* (rarely) *also ;* **et . . et,** *both . . and.*

etiam, adv., *even.*

Etrūria, -ae, f , *Etruria,* a country of Italy.

ē-vādō, -ere, -sī, -sus, *come out, turn out; evade.*

ē-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come out, turn out, happen.*

ē-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call out, summon;* **ēvocātus,** *enlisted.*

ex, or **ē** [ex before a vowel], prep. with abl., *out of, from, of; in accordance with, following from; after.*

ex-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [capiō], *receive; welcome.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *excite, arouse.*

excursiō, -ōnis [ex-currō], f., *raid.*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *go out.*

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *exercise.*

exercitus, -ūs [exerceō], m. (a trained body of men), *army.*

ex-hauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustus, *draw out, drain, exhaust.*

ex-īstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-aestimō], *estimate, reckon, consider, think.*

explōrātor, -ōris [explōrō], m , *explorer; spy, scout.*

ex-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put out, expose.*

ex-poscō, -ere, -poposcī, ——, *ask, entreat, demand.*

ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus (fight it out), *take* (a town) *by storm, capture*

exsanguis, -e, *bloodless, lifeless.*

exsilium, -ī, n , *exile*

ex-spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *look out for, wait for, expect.*

ex-spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *breathe out, expire, die.*

exsul, -is, m. and f , *an exile.*

exsulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *be or live in exile.*

exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *exult, rejoice.*

extrā, adv, or prep. with acc , *outside, outside of, beyond.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, *extreme, farthest* (186, 2), *end of.*

F

faber, -brī, m., *carpenter, workman.*

fābula, -ae, f., *story, fable.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *make, do, build.*

fāma, -ae, f , *report, tradition, reputation, fame.*

fānum, -ī, n., *shrine, sanctuary, temple.*

fascis, -is, m., *bundle;* plur , *the fasces,* a bundle of rods with an axe carried before the magistrates as an emblem of authority.

Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus,* a shepherd.

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *favor, support.*

fēlēs, -is, f , *cat.*

fenestra, -ae, f , *window.*

fera, -ae, f., *wild beast, animal.*

ferāx, -ācis [ferō], *fertile, productive.*

ferē, adv., postpositive (435, n. 14), *nearly, almost, generally.*

fermē, adv., *nearly.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring, bear, endure.*

ferōciter [ferōx], adv., *fiercely.*

ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce; ferocious.*

ferrum, -ī, n , *iron, steel; sword.*

fētiālis, -e, *fetial,* pertaining to the college of priests who declared war and peace, etc.

Fīdēnae, -ārum, f., plur , *Fidenae,* a city.

Fīdēnās, -ātis, m., *an inhabitant of Fidenae.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *faith, trust, fidelity, trustworthiness, assurance.*

fīdūcia, -ae, f , *confidence, assurance.*

fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, m., *son*

fīnis, -is, m., *limit, end, boundary;* plur., *territory.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um [fīnis] *near, neighboring;* plur., *neighbors.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum (supplies pass. to faciō), *be made, be done, become, happen* (484).

fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fīrmus], *strengthen.*

fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong.*

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *demand, entreat.*

flāmen, inis, m., *priest.*

flōs, flōris, m , *flower.*

fluitō, -āre, -āvī, —— [fluō], *float.*

flūmen, -inis [fluō], n., *river, stream*

fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxūrus, *flow.*

foedus, -a, -um, *foul, horrible, shameful.*

foedus, foederis, n., *treaty.*

fore, for futūrum esse (480).

forte, adv., *by chance.*

fortis, -e, *brave.*

fortiter [fortis], adv , *bravely.*

fortūna, -ae, f , *fortune, good fortune.*

forum, -ī, n., *the forum,* the great open square at Rome, containing the market-place and the courts of law.

forus, -ī, m., *row of seats.*

fossa, -ae, f , *ditch*

fragor, -ōris, m , *crash, roar.*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *break.*

frāter, -tris, m , *brother.*

frāternus, -a, -um [frāter], *of a brother, fraternal.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *fraud.*

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain.*

fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *enjoy*

Fufetius, -ī, m , *Fufetius,* an Alban general

fuga, -ae, f , *flight.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee, escape, avoid.*

fugitīvus, -ī [fugiō], m., *fugitive, deserter.*

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, ——, *shine, glitter.*

fulmen, inis [fulgeō], n., *lightning, thunderbolt*

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *pour, pour out, scatter, rout.*

fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *perform.*

futūrus, -a, -um [sum], *about to be, future.*

G

Gabiī, -ōrum, plur., m., *Gabii,* a town of Latium

Gabīnus, -ī, m , *an inhabitant of Gabii.*

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul.*

gallīna, -ae, f., *a hen.*

Gallus, -ī, m., *a Gaul.*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum (487), *rejoice.*

gaudium, -ī [gaudeō], n., *joy.*

gemīnātus, -a, -um, *doubled.*

geminus, -ī, m , *twin-born, twin.*

gemmātus, -a, -um, *set with gems, jeweled.*

Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva,* a town of the Allobroges.

gener, -erī, m., *son-in-law.*

gēns, -tis, f., *tribe, nation, clan, family*

genus, -eris, n , *kind, class, race.*

Germānus, -ī, m , *a German.*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *manage, do, wage* (war), *wear, carry*

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.*

glōria, -ae, f , *reputation, glory, fame.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum [glória], *boast.*

gradus, -ūs, m., *step, grade.*

Graecia, -ae, f , *Greece.*

grātia, -ae [grātus], f , *favor, influence*, plur , *thanks, gratitude.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [grātus], *congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um, *grateful, pleasing.*

gravis, -e, *heavy, severe.*

graviter [gravis], adv., *heavily, severely.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *have, hold, consider.*

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *dwell, live, inhabit.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, m., *the Haedui,* a tribe of Gaul.

haedus, -ī, m , *goat, kid.*

hasta, -ae, f., *spear.*

haud, adv., *not.*

Helvētiī, -ōrum, m., *the Helvetii,* a powerful tribe in Gaul.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *Helvetian.*

hīberna, -ōrum, n., plur., *winter quarters.*

hīc, haec, hōc, demons. pronoun, *this* (252); as pers. pron., *he, she, it.*

hīc, adv., *here, in this place.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [hiems], *pass the winter, winter.*

hiems, -mis, f., *winter.*

hinc, adv., *hence, from here;* hinc . . . hinc, *here . . . there* or *now . . . now.*

homō, -inis, m. and f., *a person, man.*

Horātiī, -ōrum, m., *the Horatii,* the brothers who fought the Curiatii.

Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius,* a man's name.

horror, -ōris, m , *horror.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *exhort, encourage.*

hortus, -ī, m., *garden.*

hospes, -itis, m , *host.*

Hostīlia, -ae, f., *Hostilia,* the name of the senate-house built by Hostilius.

hostis, -is, m. and f , *enemy.*

Hostius Hostīlius, -ī, m , *Hostius Hostilius,* who defeated the Sabines.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *human.*

I

iaseō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *lie* (low), *lie* (slain).

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw, hurl.*

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *toss about, talk about.*

iam, adv., *now, already, at last;* nōn iam, *no longer.*

Iāniculum, -ī, n., *the Janiculum,* a hill of Rome (not one of the seven) west of the Tiber.

iānua, -ae, f., *gate, door.*

Iānus, -ī, m., *Janus,* the god of doors, passages, etc.

Iānus, -ī, m., *the temple of Janus.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

īcō, -ere, īcī, īctus, *strike, form* (an alliance), *make* (a treaty).

īctus, -ūs [īcō], m., *blow, stroke.*

īdem, eadem, idem, demons. pron. (246), *the same.*

Īdūs, -uum, plur , f., *the Ides.*

ignis, -is, m., *fire.*

ille, illa, illud, demons. pron., *that;* as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (254).

imbēcillis, -e, *weak.*

imber, -bris, m, *rain.*

imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, *imbue, affect.*

impedīmentum, -ī [impediō], n, *hindrance,* plur., *baggage, baggage-trains.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *impede, hinder.*

imperātor, -ōris [imperō], m., *commander, general* (in chief).

imperītus, -a, -um, *unskilled. ignorant*

imperium, -ī [imperō], n, *command, rule, supreme authority*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *command, rule, order.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gain a request, prevail.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack; force, fury*

implicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, or -uī, -itus, *implicate, involve, fall* (sick), *be disabled* (by sickness)

im-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring in, import.*

imprūdentia, -ae, f., *want of foresight, indiscretion, imprudence.*

in, prep. with abl., *in, on, in the time of;* with the acc, *into, to, with a view to, for.*

inānis, -e, *empty, useless, vain.*

incendium, -ī [incendō], n., *fire.*

incendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus, *set fire to, burn, inflame, excite.*

in-certus, -a, -um, *uncertain.*

inchoō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *begin, commence.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *incite.*

inclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *cry out.*

inclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *incline, waver, give way.*

inclitus, -a, -um, *celebrated.*

incola, -ae, m. or f., *inhabitant.*

incolō, -ere, -uī, ——, *dwell in, inhabit.*

in-crēdibilis, -e. *incredible*

increpō, -āre, -uī, -itus, *sound, rattle*

incursiō, -ōnis [in-currō], f, *incursion, raid*

inde, adv, *from there, thereupon, thence*

index, -icis, m, *informer, index, sign.*

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [index], *indicate, declare*

indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *declare* (war).

indīgnāns, -antis, *indignant.*

indolēs, -is, f, *character, disposition, quality.*

inductus, -a, -um [indūcō], *led on, influenced.*

indulgentia, -ae, f, *indulgence, fondness, favor.*

ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go into, enter, begin, form* (a plan), *find* (a way).

in-ermis, -e [arma] (267, *b*), *unarmed.*

īnfāns, -antis, m, *infant, child.*

īn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring upon, make upon, inflict.*

īnfēstus, -a, -um, *hostile.*

īn-fīrmus, -a, -um, *weak.*

īn-fit [in-fīō], impers., *begins, speaks.*

īn-fluō, -ere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *flow in.*

ingēns, -entis, *great, huge, terrible.*

in-gredior, -ī, -gressus sum [in-gradior], *advance, enter, undertake.*

inhiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gaze at, long for, be eager for.*

in-hūmānus, -a, -um, *inhuman.*

in-imīcus, -a, -um [amīcus], *unfriendly.*

initium, -ī [ineō], n., *beginning.*

iniūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injustice, injury.*

iniūstus, -a, -um, *unjust.*

inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack.*

inquit, defect. verb, *he says*, used after one or two words of a direct quotation

īn-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow after, pursue*

īnsīgnis, -e, *distinguished.*

īnsolenter, adv., *insolently, haughtily.*

īn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [īn-statuō], *institute, appoint, set up, establish; train.*

īnstitūtum, -ī [īn-stituō], n., *institution, custom.*

īnstitūtiō, -ōnis [īn-stituō], f., *arrangement, custom, training.*

īnstruō, -ere, -ūxī, -ūctus, *draw up, arrange.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *island.*

integer, -gra, -grum, *unimpaired, fresh.* [*understand.*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *know,*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among.*

inter-clūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [claudō], *shut off, block up, intercept, hinder.*

inter-dum, adv., *sometimes.*

intereā, adv., *meanwhile.*

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *kill.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, *kill.*

interpres, -etis, m. and f., *interpreter.*

inter-rēgnum, -ī, n., *interregnum.*

inter-vallum, -ī, n., *interval.*

intus, adv., *within.*

in-vehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *carry in;* in pass., *be carried on, borne on; ride.*

in-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *come upon, find, invent, discover.*

invidia, ae, f., *envy, greed, jealousy, criticism.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demons. adj and pronoun, *self, very* (256 a-d)

īra, -ae, f., *anger, wrath.*

īrātus, -a, -um, *angry, enraged.*

irrītō, āre, -āvī, -ātus, *incite, stir up, irritate*

is, ea, id, demons. pron., *this, that;* as pers pron., *he, she, it* (245, 248).

iste, ista, istud, demons. pron., *that* (255).

ita, adv., *so, thus,* **ita . . ut,** *so . . . that,* or *as to.*

Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

Ītalus, -ī, m., *an inhabitant of Italy.*

itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*

item, adv, *likewise, also.*

iter, itineris, n., *road, route, march, course.*

iterum, adv., *a second time, again.*

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, *order, bid.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge, decide, consider.*

iugum, -ī, n., *yoke.*

iūmentum, -ī [for iugmentum], n., *yoke-animal, beast of burden*

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *join, unite.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, m , *Jupiter,* the supreme divinity of the Romans.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice.*

iussū, abl. only, *by order.*

iūstitia, -ae, f , *justice.*

iūstus, -a, -um, *just, regular.*

iuvenca, -ae, f., *cow, heifer.*

iuvenis, -e, *young;* as noun, *young man, youth.*

iuventūs, -ūtis [iuvenis], f., *a body of young men, youth.*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *help, aid.*

L

L. = Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius.*

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus,* Caesar's lieutenant.

labor, -ōris, m., *labor, hardship.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *labor, work; suffer from.*

lacessō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *provoke, attack, assail*

lacrima, -ae, f., *a tear.*

lacus, -ūs, m , *lake.*

laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyous.*

laniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tear in pieces.*

lapideus, -a, -um [lapis], *of stone, stony.*

lapis, -idis, m., *a stone.*

largītiō, -ōnis, f., *lavish giving, bribery.*

lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *lie hid.*

Latīnus, -ī, m., *Latinus,* a king in Latium.

Latīnus, -a, -um, *of Latium, Latin.*

Latium, -ī, n., *Latium,* a country of Italy.

latus, -eris, n., *side, flank.*

lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad.*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laus], *praise.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise.*

Lāvīnia, -ae, f., *Lavinia,* daughter of Latinus

Lāvīnium, -ī, n., *Lavinium,* a city founded by Aeneas in honor of Lavinia.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f , *embassy.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *deputy, ambassador; lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, f., *a legion.*

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *choose, select; read.*

lēnitās, -ātis [lēnis], f , *mildness, gentleness, lenity.*

leō, -ōnis, m., *lion.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law, a stipulation, a (binding) agreement.*

libenter, adv., *willingly, gladly.*

liber, -brī, m., *book.*

līber, -era, -erum, *free.*

līberī, -ōrum, plur , m., *children* (64).

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [līber], *free, liberate.*

lībertās, -ātis [līber], f , *liberty, freedom*

licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, *it is allowed,* (one) *may* (489).

lictor, -ōris, m., *a lictor,* an official attendant of a Roman magistrate.

Lingonēs, -um, plur , m , *Lingones,* a tribe of Gaul.

linter, -tris, f , *a boat.*

lītus, -oris, n , *shore, beach.*

locus, -ī, m., *place, position;* plur., n., loca, -ōrum.

longē [longus], adv., *long, far, by far, far away.*

longinquus, -a, -um, *long, long continued, long ago.*

longus, -a, -um, *long.*

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *speak, talk.*

Lūcius Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Lucius Tarquinius,* one of the kings of Rome

Lucrētia, -ae, f., *Lucretia,* wife of Collatinus.

lūdicrum, -ī, n , *sport, mockery.*

lūdus, -ī, m , *sport, game.*

lūmen, -inis, n , *light, a light.*

lūna, -ae, f., *moon.*

lupa, -ae, f., *wolf, she-wolf.*

lupus, -ī, m , *wolf, he-wolf.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.*

M

maculō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, *spot, stain, soil.*

maestus, -a, -um, *sad, gloomy.*

magis, adv., *rather* (194).

magister, -trī, m., *master, director, leader.*

magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistrate, officer.*

magnificentia, -ae, f., *magnificence.*

magnificus, -a, -um, *magnificent, splendid, lofty.*

magnitūdō, -inis [magnus], f., *greatness, size, magnitude.*

magnopere [abl **magnō opere,** *with great labor*], adv., *very much, greatly, earnestly.*

magnus, -a, -um, *great.*

male [malus], adv., *badly.* [*vile.*

male-dīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, *re-*

maleficium, -ī, n., *harm, mischief.*

maleficus, -ī, m , *an evil-doer.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— [magisvolō], *wish rather, choose, prefer.*

malus, -a, -um, *bad.*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, wait, remain.

Mānīlius, -ī, m , *Manilius,* a Roman family name

Mānlius, -ī, m., *Manlius,* a Roman family name.

manus, -ūs, f., *hand; a force or band* (of troops).

Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus,* a Roman personal name.

mare, -is, n., *sea.*

Mārs, -tis, m., *Mars,* the god of war.

massa, -ae, f., *mass.*

māter, -tris, f., *mother.*

māteria, -ae, f., *material, means.*

mātrimōnium, -ī [māter], n., *marriage, matrimony.*

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten, make haste.*

maximē [maximus], adv., *mostly, most, especially.*

medius, -a, -um, *middle, midway, the middle of.*

memor, -oris, *mindful, remembering, desirous of.*

memoria, -ae [memor], f , *memory, record*

mēnsis, -is, m., *a month.*

mercātor, -ōris, m , *merchant, trader.*

Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury,* the messenger of the gods.

mereor, -ērī, meritus sum, *merit, deserve.*

Mettius Curtius, -ī, m., *Mettius Curtius,* a Sabine chief.

metus, -ūs, m., *fear, dread.*

micō, -āre, micuī, ——, *flash, gleam, quiver.*

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *move, remove, migrate, go.*

mīles, -itis, m., *soldier.*

mīlitāris, -e [mīles], *military, warlike.*

mīlitia, -ae [mīles], f., *military service.*

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *serve as a soldier.*

mīlle, sing , indecl. num. adj *a thousand;* plur., noun, **mīlia,** -ium, n , *thousands.*

mīrābilis, -e [mīror], *wonderful, admirable.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *wonder at, wonder; admire.*

miser, -era, -erum, *pitiful, wretched, poor, miserable.*

mītigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [mītis], *soften, mitigate.*

mītis, -e, *soft, mild, gentle.*

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *send.*

modo, adv., *only, merely ; recently.*

modus, -ī, m., *manner, way.*

moenia, -ium, plur , n., *walls, fortifications.*

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn.*

mōns, montis, m., *hill, mountain.*

morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

moror, -ārī, morātus sum, *delay.*

mors, -tis, f., *death.*

mortuus, -a, -um [morior], *dead.*

mōs, mōris, m., *habit, custom, disposition.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*

mox, adv., *soon.*

mulier, -eris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, -inis [multus], f., *multitude, great number; the people*

multus, -a, -um, *much;* plur, *many.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *fortify.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis [mūniō], f., *fortifying, fortification.*

mūnus, -eris, n , *duty, service; gift; entertainment.*

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*

mūs, mūris, m. and f., *mouse.*

N

nam, conj , *for.*

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *narrate, tell*

nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, *be born.*

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*

nāvis, -is, f., *ship, vessel.*

-ne, enclitic, sign of question.

nē, conj., *lest, that not.*

nec, conj., short form of **neque** used before consonants, *and not; neither, nor*

necesse, indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable*

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *kill.*

neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *neglect, overlook.*

negōtium, -ī, n., *business, trouble; instructions.*

nēmō, -inī, -inem (no gen. or abl) [nē-homō], m., *no one, nobody.*

nepōs, -ōtis, m , *grandson.*

neque, conj (shortened to **nec** before some consonants), *and not, neither;* **neque . . . neque,** *neither . . . nor.*

nēquīquam, adv., *in vain.*

niger, -gra, -grum, *black.*

nihil, n., indecl., *nothing.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

nōbilis, -e, *well known, noble, excellent, high-born.*

nōbilitās, -ātis [nōbilis], f., *nobleness, excellence, nobility, fame.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— [nōn-volō], *be unwilling*

nōmen, -inis [nōscō], n., (that by which a thing is known), *name*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet.*

nōn-ne, see 56, 6 and *b*

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *learn;* **nōvī,** *I have learned,* therefore *I know.*

noster, -tra, -trum, poss adj., *our*

novendiālis, -e, *of nine days, nine-day.*

novus, -a, -um, *new;* **novissimus,** *newest, latest, rear* (of army).

nox, noctis, f , *night.*

nūbēs, -is, f , *cloud*

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, *marry.*

nūllus, -a, -um [nē-ullus], *not any, no, no one, none*

Numa Pompilius, -ī, m., *Numa Pompilius,* the second king of Rome.

numerus, -ī, m , *number*

Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor,* son of King Silvius

numquam or **nunquam** [nē-um-quam], adv., *never.*

nunc, adv , *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *announce, report.*

nūntius, -ī, m , *messenger, message.*

nūper, adv , *lately, recently.*

nūptiae, -ārum [nūbō], plur., f., *marriage rights, marriage.*

nūsquam [nē-usquam], adv., *nowhere.*

nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *nourish, bring up.*

O

ob, prep., *for.*

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *attend to, perform.*

ob-ruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutus, *bury, cover.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *beseech, entreat*

obses, -idis, m., *hostage.*

ob-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be in the way of, hinder, injure*

ob-testor, -ārī, -tātus sum, *implore.*

ob-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [teneō], *hold, obtain.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus [ob-caedō], *cut down, kill.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *seize, occupy.*

Ocelum, -ī, n., *Ocelum,* a town in Gaul.

octō, num. adj., *eight.*

octōgintā, num. adj., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, -isse, ōsūrus, (def verb, not used in the present system, 99, *b*), *hate.*

offendō, -ere, -dī, -fēnsus, *offend, hurt (the feelings,* animum).

offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendō], f , *offense.*

ōlim, adv., *once, formerly.*

omnis, -e, *all, every.*

onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight.*

opera, -ae [opus], f , *service, help.*

oportet, -ēre, -uit, *it behooves, it is necessary,* (one) *ought.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *fall upon, press hard, crush.*

op-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-pugnō], *attack, besiege.*

[ops], opis, f., *aid, power, resources.*

opus, -eris, n., *work;* opus est, *there is need*

ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis [ōrō], f., *speech, oration, talk, argument.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle.*

orbus, -a, -um, *bereft, bereaved.*

ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, rank, line.*

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., *Orgetorix,* a chief among the Helvetii.

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *rise, arise, begin.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *plead, speak, entreat.*

ostendō, -ere, -dī, -tus, *show.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *leisure, rest, quiet, peace.*

ovis, -is, f., *a sheep.*

ōvum, -ī, n , *egg.*

ovō, -āre, ——, ——, *rejoice.*

P

P. = Pūblius, -ī, m., *Publius,* a personal name.   ]due.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pacify, subdue.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

pāgus, -ī, m., *canton, district.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*

papāver, -eris, n., *a poppy.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.*

parātus, -a, -um, *prepared, ready.*

parēns, -entis, m and f , *a parent.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *obey*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, *bring forth, lay* (an egg).

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *prepare, get ready, procure*

pars, -tis, f , *part, side; direction.*

parvus, -a, -um, *small.*

pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstus, *feed.*

passus, -ūs, m., *a step.*

pāstor, -ōris [pāscō], m , *a shepherd.*

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus [pateō], *lay open, reveal.*

pater, -tris, m., *father ;* plur., *fathers, senators.*

patria, -ae [patrius], f., *native land, country.*

patrius, -a, -um [pater], *of a father, fatherly, paternal.*

paucī, -ae, -a, plur only, *few.*

paulō, adv , *by a little, little.*

paulum, adv., *a little.*

pavidus, -a, -um, *trembling, alarmed, in fright.*

pāx, pācis, f , *peace.*

pectus, -oris, n , *breast, heart.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*

pedes, -itis [pēs], m , *foot-soldier,* plur , *infantry.*

peditātus, -ūs [pedes], m., *infantry*

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *force, thrust, beat, drive, rout.*

penitus, adv., *deeply, utterly.*

peperit, see **pariō.**

per, prep with acc , *through, during, over.*

per-agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, *go through, explain*

per-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *lose*

per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, run* (a wall).

peregrīnus, -a, -um [per-ager], *foreign, strange*

per-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *accomplish, finish*

perfidus, -a, -um, *faithless, treacherous, perfidious*

perīculum, -ī, n , *trial, danger, risk, peril.*

perītus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled*

per-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move greatly, trouble*

perniciēs, -ēī, f., *injury, ruin, destruction.*

per-opportūnē, adv , *very opportunely, very fortunately*

perpetuus, -a, -um, *continuous, unbroken, perpetual.*

perpetuō, adv., *perpetually*

per-sequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue*

per-stringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictus, *run through, seize, move deeply*

per-suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, convince.*

per-territus, -a, -um, *alarmed, frightened*

per-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, —— [teneō], *extend, reach, pertain to*

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *alarm, disturbance*

per-veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *come through, reach, arrive*

pēs, pedis, m , *foot*

pestilentia, -ae, f , *pestilence.*

petō, -ere, -iī (-īvī), -ītus, *beg, seek.*

pietās, -ātis, f , *devotion, loyalty, patriotism, piety*

pigritia, -ae, f , *disinclination.*

pilleus, -ī, m , *cap.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *please.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f , *plain.*

plēbs, plēbis, f , *the people, the common people, the plebeians.*

pluit, -ere, pluisse, impers , *it rains.*

poena, -ae, f , *punishment.*

poēta, -ae, m , *poet.*

polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum, *promise.*

Pōmētia, -ae, f., *Pometia,* a town of the Volsci

pondus, -eris, n., *weight.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *place, put, lay aside, pitch* (camp)

pōns, pontis, m , *a bridge.*

pontifex, -icis, m , *high priest, pontiff, pontifex*

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ravage, lay waste, destroy.*

populus, -ī, m , *people*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry.*

portus, -ūs, m., *port, harbor.*

poscō, -ere, poposcī, ——, *ask, beg, request, demand.*

possum, posse, potuī, —— (480), *be able, can.*

post, prep. with acc., *after;* adv., *afterwards*

posteā, adv , *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, *following, next;* **posterī,** plur., *posterity, descendants*

postquam, conj., *after.*

postulāta, -ōrum [postulō], plur, n., *things demanded, demands*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask, request, demand*

potēns, -tis [possum], *powerful.*

potentia, -ae [potēns], f , *power.*

potestās, -ātis [possum], f , *power, authority; opportunity, chance.*

potior, -īrī, -tītus sum, *get control.*

prae, prep. with abl., *before, in the presence of.*

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [for prae-hibeō, from prae-habeō], *hold before, offer, furnish, show.*

praeda, -ae, f., *plunder, booty.*

prae-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *put at the head of, put in command, appoint.*

prae-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send ahead.*

prae-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *put in charge of.*

prae-scrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus *prescribe for, direct.*

praesēns, -entis [praesum], *present.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *protection, guard*

praestantia, -ae, f., *superiority.*

prae-sum, -esse, -fuī, *be present, be at the head of, have charge of, command, hold* (an office).

praeter, prep. with acc., *besides, beyond, except.*

praetereā, adv., *besides.*

praeter-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *go beyond, pass by.*

praeter-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *let go by, pass over*

prātum, -ī, n , *a meadow.*

[prex, precis], f. (used mostly in plur.), *prayer, entreaty*

prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsus, *seize, catch.*

prīmus, -a, -um (186, 1), *first.*

prīnceps, -ipis, m , *leader, chief.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership.*

priusquam, conj , *sooner than, before.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, *private*

prō, prep. with abl , *before, in behalf of, instead of, for.*

Procās, -ae, m., *Procas,* king of Alba

prō-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *go forward, advance, proceed*

procul, adv., *from a distance.*

Proculus, -ī, m , *Proculus.*

prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *advance, come forward, appear.*

prōdigium, -ī, n., *omen, prodigy, monster.*

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treachery.*

proelium, -ī, n , *battle.*

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, *set out, start.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [pro-habeō], *prohibit, prevent.*

proinde, adv , *therefore.*

prope, prep with acc , *near, near to;* adv , *nearby, nearly, almost*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *hasten.*

propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring; kindred, related; a relative.*

prō-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, *set before, propose.* [of

propter, prep. with acc , *on account*

prō-sum, prōdesse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be for, be helpful to, benefit, help.*

prō-videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *see beforehand, foresee, provide for, provide.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

proximus, -a, -um (186, 1), *nearest, next, last.*

prūdēns, -entis, *foreseeing, sagacious, wise.*

prūdenter (prūdēns), adv., *wisely.*

pūblicē [pūblicus], adv., *publicly, as a people.*

pūblicus, -a, -um [for populicus, from populus], *of the people, public, common.*

puella, -ae [puer], f., *girl.*

puer, -erī, m , *boy;* puerī, plur., *children.*

puerīlis, -e, *boyish, suitable for boys*

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fight.*

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful, honorable.* [*ian.*

Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Punic, Carthagin-*

pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *punish.*

pūrgāmentum, -ī, n., *filth, dregs.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, suppose.*

Q

quadrāgintā, num. adj., *forty*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *inquire, ask.*

quālis, -e, *(such) as, what sort of ?*

quam, conj., *than,* adv., *how ?*

quamdiū, adv , *(as long) as, how long?*

quantus, -a, -um, *(as great) as, how great?*

quārtus, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth*

quattuor, num. adj., *four.*

-que, conj., enclitic (16), *and* (footnote 2, p. 83).

queror, -ī, questus sum, *complain.*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), *a certain, some one* (402).

quidem, adv , postpositive (435, n. 14), *indeed, surely, to be sure;* nē . . . quidem, *not . . . even.*

quiēs, -ētis, f., *quiet, rest.*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet (quidlibet), *any one* (402).

quīnque, num. adj., *five*

Quirīnālis, -e, *Quirinal,* one of the hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, -ī, m., *Quirinus,* a title of honor, given to the deified Romulus.

Quirītēs, -ium, m , *Quirites,* a name used in addressing Roman citizens.

quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), *who ? which ? what ?* (233).

quis, qua, quid (quod), *any, any one* (402)

quisquam, ——, quidquam (quicquam), *any one (at all)* (402).

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), *each one, every* (402).

quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs (quidvīs), *any one* (402).

quoad, conj , *until, as long as.*

quod, conj., *because.*

quoniam, conj., *since.*

quoque, adv. (after an emphatic word, 435, n. 14), *also, too.*

quot, indecl. adj , *(so many) as, how many?*

R

rapīna, -ae [rapiō], f , *plunder.*

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptus, *seize, rob, plunder.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f , *scheme, plan.*

ratis, -is, f., *raft* [*inspect.*

recēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *review,*

recēnsus, -ūs, m , *a review.*

receptāculum, -ī [recipiō], n., *receptacle, reservoir*

re-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [recapiō], *take back, receive;* sē recipere, *to take one's self back, retreat, return.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *regain.*

re-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse, reject.*

red-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus [re(d)-dō], *give back, return ; render, make*

red-eō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [re(d)-eō], *go back, return*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *renew.*

re-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead back.*

re-ferō, -ferre, rettulī, relātus, *bring back, report.*

re-ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [faciō], *rebuild, repair.*

re-fluō, -ere, ——, ——, *flow back, overflow.*

rēgia, -ae [rēgius], f , *royal (palace)*

rēgīna, -ae [rēx], f , *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, *region, country, place.*

rēgius, -a, -um [rēx], *of the king, kingly, royal.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [rēgnum], *rule, reign.*

rēgnum, -ī [regō], n , *rule, royalty, supreme power*

religiō, -ōnis, f., *duty (to the gods), reverence, religion*

re-linquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus, *leave, abandon.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *left, remaining, the rest of.*

re-maneō, -ēre, -mānsī, ——, *stay behind, remain.* [*back*

re-mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send*

re-moveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move back, remove.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus,* the brother of Romulus.

re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-novō, from novus, *new*], *renew.*

re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *bring back word, report.*

re-pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive back, repel.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus, *find, discover.*

re-petō, -ere, (-īvī) -iī, -ītus, *seek anew, demand back;* with rēs, *demand restitution.*

re-pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -itus, *put back, replace, place, put, lay aside.*

rēs, -eī, f , *thing, event, circumstance, affair, matter, state.*

re-scindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *break down, demolish*

re-sistō, -ere, -stitī, ——, *resist, stop.*

re-spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *look back.*

re-spondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *answer, reply* . [*store.*

re-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō], *re-*

re-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [teneō], *retain, restrain.*

re-vertor, -tī, -sus sum (**revertī**: in perfect system, active), *turn back, return*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f , *Rhea Silvia,* the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, m , *the Rhine,* the river between Gaul and Germany.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone,* a river of Gaul.

rīpa, -ae, f , *bank* (of a river).

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak; strength.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome,* the city founded by Romulus.

Rōmānus, -a, -um [Rōma], *Roman.*

Rōmānī, -ōrum, plur., m., *the Romans*

Rōmulus, -ī, m , *Romulus,* the founder of Rome.

rosa, -ae, f , *a rose.*

ruīna, -ae, f., *ruin.*

rūrsus, adv., *back again, again.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country* (353, 354).

S

Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Sabinus,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Sabines,* an Italian people.

sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred;* **sacra**, -ōrum, plur., n., *sacred rites, sacrifices.*

sacerdōs, -ōtis [sacer], m. and f., *priest, priestess.*

saepe, adv , *often.*

sagitta, -ae, f , *arrow.* [*ful*

salūber [or **-bris**], -bris, -bre, *health-*

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*

salvus, -a, -um, *safe.*

sanguineus, -a, -um [sanguis], *bloody, dipped in blood.*

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood.*

sapiēns, -entis, *wise.*

satis, adv., *sufficient, enough*

Saturnus, -ī, m., *Saturn,* the ancient god of agriculture in Italy

saxum, -ī, n., *a rock.*

scelerātus, -a, -um [scelus], *wicked, criminal.*

scelus, -eris, n., *crime.*

scienter [sciō], adv., *skilfully.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know*

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*

sē, see **suī,** 240.

secundus, -a, -um [sequor], *following, second, favorable.*

sēcrētō, adv., *secretly.*

sed, conj., *but.*

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, *sit*

sēdēs, -is [sedeō], f , *seat*

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, *insurrectionary, seditious, reckless.*

sella, -ae, f , *chair*

semel, adv., *once (a single time)* Cf. **ōlim.**

semper, adv., *ever, always.*

senātus, -ūs [senex], m., *council of elders, senate.*

senex, senis, *old; aged man.*

senior, -ōris [senex], m. and f , *elder, senior.*

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel, realize, perceive*

septem, num. adj., *seven.*

septimus, -a, -um, num. adj. ord., *seventh.*

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, *follow.*

sērus, -a, -um, *late.*

serviō, -īre, -īvī, servītūrus [servus], *be a slave to, serve, give heed to*

Servius Tullius, -ī, m , *Servius Tullius,* the sixth king of Rome

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *save.*

servus, -ī, m , *slave.*

sī, conj , *if*

sibi, reflex. pron. (240).

sīc, adv , *thus, so, in such a manner.* Cf **tam.**

siccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [siccus], *drain.*

siccus, -a, -um, *dry.*

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *show (by signs), indicate, signify.*

sīgnum, -ī, n , *sign, signal*

silentium, -ī, n , *silence.*

silva, -ae, f , *forest, woods*

Silvius, -ī, m., *Silvius,* the name of several kings of Alba

simul, adv , *at the same time*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pretend.*

sin, conj , *but if*

sine, prep , *without*

singulī, -ae, -a, dis num adj , *one by one, one apiece, single, separate.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (hand), *unfavorable*

sistō, -ere, stitī, status, *stand, stop.*

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.*

societās, -ātis [socius], f , *alliance, association, society.*

socius, -ī, m , *associate, ally.*

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum (semi-deponent), *be accustomed, be wont.*

sōlum [sōlus], adv., *only, alone.*

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, single, sole*

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *loosen, break up, melt, pay* (debt); *solve.*

sonitus, -ūs, m., *sound, noise.*

sōpiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *put to sleep, stun, render unconscious.*

sordidus, -a, -um, *filthy, soiled* (clothes), worn as a sign of mourning; *sordid.*

soror, -ōris, f , *sister* [*nity*

spatium, -ī, n , *space, time, opportu-*

speciēs, -ēī, f , *brilliance, show, ap-pearance*

spectāculum, -ī [spectō], n , *show, spectacle.*

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *watch, witness, look at.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spēs], *hope.*

spēs, -eī, f., *hope*

spīritus, -ūs, m , *breathing, breath, spirit, high spirit, pride, arro-gance.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rob, plunder, spoil, despoil.*

spolium, -ī [spoliō], n , *booty, spoil.*

Spurius Tarpēius, -ī, m., *Spurius Tarpeius,* a commander of the guard at the Capitol.

statim, adv , *at once, immediately.*

stator, -ōris [stō], m , *the stayer, Stator,* an epithet applied to Jupiter (444).

statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [stō], (*make stand*), *set up, erect, station, place, determine, decree, decide;* **dē . . . statuere,** *to pass judgment upon.*

stella, -ae, f., *star.*

stimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spur on, incite, stimulate.*

stō, -āre, stetī, statūrus, *stand, stand firm.*

studeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *be zealous for, strive for, devote* (one's self) *to, favor, desire, study, be interested in.*

studium, -ī [studeō], n., *zeal, desire, study.*

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *advise, urge.*

sub, prep., with acc. after verbs of motion and abl. after verbs of rest, *under, at the foot of, near, up to.*

subitō, adv , *suddenly.*

Sublicius, -a, -um (*resting on piles*), *Sublician,* the name of a bridge at Rome.

sublīmis, -e, *uplifted, borne aloft, through the sky.* [*nish.*

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fur-*

subsidium, -ī, n , *relief, assistance.*

sub-siliō, -īre, -siluī or -siliī, ——, *leap up* [*up.*

sub-vehō, -ere, vēxī, -vectus, *bring*

suc-cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *come near to; succeed.*

Suēvī, -ōrum, m., *the Suevi,* a Ger-man tribe.

suī, reflex. pron , *of himself,* etc. (240).

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be* (480).

summa, -ae, f., *sum, total.*

summus, see **superus** (186, 2).

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, assume, consume, spend*

super, prep. with acc. and abl., *over, above, upon, beyond.*

superbē [superbus], adv., *proudly, haughtily*

superbia, -ae [superbus], f , *pride, haughtiness*

superbus, -a, -um [super], *proud, haughty*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [superus], *rise above, outdo, surpass, over-come, defeat*

superstitiō, -ōnis, f , *superstition.*

super-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *be over, remain, survive, outlive.*

superus, -a, -um [super], *above, higher* (186, 2), *former* (in time).

supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment.*

sus-cipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus [sub-capiō], *undertake, take up, begin, ordain ; undergo, incur.*

sus-piciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus [sub-speciō], *look up to, respect; look at ; mistrust, suspect.*

suspīciō, -ōnis, f , *suspicion*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *suspect.*

sus-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub-teneō], *hold up, sustain, hold out, endure, withstand.*

sus-tulērunt, see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj., *his* (own), *her* (own), *its* (own), *their* (own) (241).

T

T. = Titus, -ī, m., *Titus*, a personal name.

tacitus, -a, -um, *silent, without speaking.*

tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*

tam, adv., *so, to such a degree.*

tamquam, conj , *as if, as it were.*

Tanaquil, -īlis, f , *Tanaquil*, the wife of Tarquinius Priscus

tandem, adv , *at length, at last.*

tantum, adv , *only.*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such.*

Tarquinius, -ī, m , *Tarquinius*, the name of an early Roman family, of whom two, Priscus and Superbus, were kings of Rome

tēctum, -ī, n., *covering, roof.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon.*

tempestās, -ātis [tempus], f , (*the state of the time*), *weather; storm, tempest.*

templum, -ī, n , *temple.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *tempt, try.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time.*

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, *hold.*

tener -era, -erum, *tender, delicate.*

ternī, -ae, -a, dis. num adj , *three each, three together, triplets.*

terra, -ae, f., *land, earth, ground.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *frighten*

terror, -ōris [terreō], m., *terror, fright*

tertius, -a, -um, *third.*

testis, -is, m. and f., *witness.*

Tiberis, -is, m , *the Tiber*, a river of Italy

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear, be afraid of*

timidus, -a, -um [timeō], *timid.*

timor, -ōris [timeō], m , *fear, fright*

tintinnābulum, -ī, n , *a bell*

Titūrius, -ī, m , *Titurius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *take up, pick up, raise*

tonitrus, -ūs, m., *thunder.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many, as many*

totiēns, adv , *so often, as often.*

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, total, entire, all.*

trā-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *hand over, give up, surrender; relate, hand down by tradition.*

trā- (or trāns-)dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across*

trāns, prep with acc , *across, on the other side of, over.*

trāns-eō,-īre, (-īvī) -iī,-itus, *go across, cross, pass over*

trāns-fīgō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *pierce through, stab.*

trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, —— [trāns-saliō], *leap across* or *over*

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry over, transport.*

trēs, tria, num adj , *three.*

trepidus, -a, -um, *anxious, alarming.*

trīduum, -ī [trēs-diēs], n., *three days' time, three days*

trigeminus, -a, -um, *triple-born, triple, a triplet*

trigintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*

triplex, -icis, *triple, threefold.*

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *celebrate a triumph.*

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, an ancient city of Asia Minor.   [*jan*

Trōiānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*, a *Tro-*

trucīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus. *slaughter, murder*

tuba, -ae, f , *trumpet.*

tubicen, -inis, m., *a trumpeter.*

Tullus, -ī, m., *Tullus,* a personal name.

tum, adv , *then, at that time.*

tumultus, -ūs, m , *uproar, disorder, tumult.*

tumulus, -ī, m., *mound, hill.*

turba, -ae, f., *crowd, throng.*

turma, -ae, f., *a troop, squadron.*

turris, -is, f , *tower* (129).

tūtō [tūtus], adv , *safely.*

tūtor, -ōris [tūtus], m., *guardian, tutor.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your* (241).

tyrannus, -ī, m., *(absolute) ruler, tyrant.*

U

ubi, interrog. or rel. adv , *where.*

ubi, conj , *as soon as, when.*

ubique, adv., *everywhere.*

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, *avenge, punish.*

ūllus, -a, -um, *any, any one* (200).

ulterior, -ius, *further* (186, 1)

unde, interrog. or rel. adv , *whence, from which.*

undique [unde], adv , *everywhere, on all sides, from every direction, from all sources.*

ūnus, -a, -um, *one ; alone, only* (202).

ūniversus, -a, -um, *all together, whole, entire ; universal.*

urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], *of the city.*

urbs, -is, f., *city.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, advantage.*

ut, or utī, conj., *that, in order that, as.*

uter, -tra, -trum, *which (of the two)?* (200).

uterque, -traque, -trumque [uter], *each (of the two), both* (200).

utinam, adv , *O that, would that*

utrimque [uterque], adv , *on both sides.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, *use, employ, adopt.*

ūva, -ae, f., *a bunch of grapes.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacuus, -a, -um, *vacant, destitute, without*

vadum, -ī, n., *ford ;* vadō, *by fording*

vāgītus, -ī, m., *crying.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *be strong, be well ; have influence.*

validus, -a, -um [valeō], *strong.*

vallēs, -is, f , *valley.*

vānus, -a, -um, *vain, groundless.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *lay waste, devastate.*

vehementer, adv., *vehemently, greatly.*

Vēientēs, -ium, plur., m., *the inhabitants of Veii.*

vel, conj., *or.*

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *veil.*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, *come.*

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *hunt.*

verbum, -ī, n., *word.*

vērē [vērus], adv., *truly, really.*

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *fear, dread, reverence.*

versus, prep. with acc., *towards, against.*

vērus, -a, -um, *true, real.*

vēscor, -ī, ——, *eat.*

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta,* goddess of the hearth.

Vestālis, -e [Vesta], *Vestal.*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (241).

vestis, -is, f., *clothes, a garment.*

vetus, -eris, *old.*

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *harass, trouble.*

via, -ae, f , *road, street, way.*

vīcīnus, -a, -um [vīcus], *near, neighboring, neighbor*

victor, -ōris, m., *a conqueror, victor.*

victōria, -ae, f , *victory.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *village.*

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see;* pass., *be seen, appear.*

vigilantia, -ae, f., *vigilance, watchfulness.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *a watch, vigilance.*

vīgintī, num. adj., *twenty.*

Vīminālis, -e, *Viminal,* one of the seven hills of Rome.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, overcome.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim, demand.*

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*

vir, -ī, m., *man, husband*

virgō, -inis, f , *virgin, maiden.*

virgula, -ae, f , *rod, twig.*

virtūs, -ūtis [vir], f , *manliness, courage, virtue.*

vīs, vīs, f., *force;* plur., *strength.*

vīsus, -ūs [videō], m , *look, sight, vision.*

vīta, -ae, f , *life.*

vītis, -is, f., *vine* .

vitium, -ī, n., *vice, fault.*

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *avoid, shun.*

vīvus, -a, -um [vīvō], *living, alive.*

vix, adv , *scarcely*

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call, summon.*

Vocontiī, -ōrum, m., *the Vocontii,* a tribe in Gaul

volāns, -tis [volō], *flying*

volgō [volgus], adv., *among the multitude, generally, everywhere.*

volgus, -ī, n , *the people, the common people.*

volitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volō], *fly, flit about.*

volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volnus], *wound.*

volnus, -eris, n , *a wound.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *fly.*

volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish.*

Volscī, -ōrum, m , *the Volsci,* a people of Latium

voluntās, -ātis [volō], f., *willingness, consent, good-will, wish, desire*

voluptās, -ātis, f , *pleasure*

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *devote to, vow, solemnly promise.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, sound, speech, utterance.*

vulpēs, -is, f., *fox.*

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

A

a, or an, *usually not translated.*
able, *be able,* possum, posse, potuī.
about (*concerning*), dē.
about to (313, 1).
active, ācer, ācris, ācre.
advance, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus.
advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
all, omnis, -e.   [licuit.
allowed, be allowed, licet, licēre,
alone, sōlus, -a, -um (200).
already, iam.
although, cum.
always, semper.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
ancestors, maiōrēs, *plur., m.* (338, note 3).
and, et, atque (ac), -que (208, note 2).
and so, itaque.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -spōnsus.
any, ūllus, -a, -um (200).
arms, arma, -ōrum, *plur., n.*
ask, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
at home, domī (354, 1).
at once, statim.
attack, *noun,* impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attack, *verb,* oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

B

battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*
because, quod.
because of, *expressed by abl.* (141).

become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
better, *comp. of* bonus (184).
between, inter *with acc.*
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
bold, audāx, -ācis.
book, liber, librī, *m.*
border, fīnis, -is, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
bring, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
bring to, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātus.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*   [factus.
build (*a bridge*), faciō, -ere, fēcī,
but, sed.

C

call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *plur., n.*
can (be able), possum, posse, potuī.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *or* expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m., or* equitēs, *plur. of* eques.
choose, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus.
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
cohort, cohors, -tis, *f.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
commend, comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.   [tus.
complete, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-

conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus
consent, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*
consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*
country (*land*), terra, -ae, *f.*
country (*native land*), patria, -ae, *f.*
country (*opposed to city*), rūs, rūris, *n.*
courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
cruelly, crūdēliter.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sus.
deputy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
desire, studium, -ī, *n.*
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *or* agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus.

E

eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* and *f.*
entire, tōtus, -a, -um (200).
entrance, aditus, -ūs, *m.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
esteem, dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.

F

farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
farther, diūtius.
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *or* vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

fire, incendium, -ī, *n* , ignis, -is, *m.*
first, prīmus, -a, -um (186, 1).
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
free, līber, -era, -erum.
free (*set free*), līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.

G

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus
go, eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itūrus.
go from, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatest, summus, -a, -um.
guard, custōs, -ōdis, *m* and *f.*

H

harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.
heavy, gravis, -e.
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
high, altus, -a, -um.
higher (*in position*), superior (186, 2).
hill, collis, -is, *m* , *or* mōns, -tis, *m.*
himself, ipse (256); sē (256, note).
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus
hold out, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
home, domus, -ūs (210, *b.*), *f.*
hope, *noun*, spēs, speī, *f*
hope, *verb*, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -ıtis, *m*
hostage, obses, -ıdıs, *m.* and *f*

I

in, in *with the abl.*
induce, indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus
infantry, pedıtātus, -ūs, *m.; or plur. of* pedes, -itis, *m.*
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī, ——, or habıtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.* and *f*
into, in *with acc*

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
just, ıūstus, -a, -um.

K

keeper, custōs, -ōdis, *m.* and *f.*
kill, interficıō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
kind, genus, -erıs, *n*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m*
know, scıō, scīre, scīvī, scītus.

L

labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*
Laelius, Laelius, -ī, *m*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus.
leader, dux, ducis, *m*
learn, cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.
leave, relinquō, -ere, relīquī. relictus.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
less, minor, minus (184).
letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
live (*dwell*), habıtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

live (*be alive*), vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victus
lofty, altus, -a, -um.
long, longus, a, -um.
long (*a long time*), diū (195).
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus
make war upon, bellum inferō, -ferre, ıntulī, ınlātus
man, homō, -ınis, *m.,* or vir, -ī, *m.*
many, *plur. of* multus, -a, -um.
march, *noun,* iter, itineris, *n.*
march, *verb,* iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus
master, magister, -trī, *m.,* or dominus, -ī, *m.* (64).
may, *expressing a wish or exhortatıon* (397), *expressing permıssion,* licet (488).
messenger, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
most, plūrimus, -a, -um '(184).
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
much, multus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
near, ad *with acc.*
nearest, proximus (186, 1).
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
neither, neque; *adjectıve,* neuter, -tra, -trum.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus (186, 1).
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
no, nūllus, -a, -um (200).
nor, neque (nec).
now, nunc (*already*), now (*at last*), iam.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

on, in *with the abl.*

once, at once, statim

once *(formerly),* ōlim

one, ūnus, -a, -um, **the one,** alter, -era, -erum.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*

other *(another),* alius, -a, -ud (200)

other *(the other),* alter, -era, -erum (200).

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus

outer, exterior, -ius (186, 2).

own *(his, her, its, their),* suus, -a, -um.

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*

place, locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

place *(a legion),* conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *or* cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.

place before, antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus.

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

plow, arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

poor *(pitiable),* miser, -era, -erum

position, locus, -ī, *m.*

praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

prefer rather, mālō, mālle, māluī

protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

prudent, prūdēns, -dentis

punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus.

Q

quick, celer, celeris, celere.

quickly, celeriter.

R

raid, excursiō, -ōnis, *f.*

rapid, celer, celeris, celere.

rather, potius *or* magis.

reference, with reference to, dē, *with the abl.*

reject, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.

return *(come back),* redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.

return *(give back),* reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus.

river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*

road, iter, itineris, *n*

rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus.

S

safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

same, īdem, eadem, idem

save, servō *or* cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

sea, mare, maris, *n.*

see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus.

seek, petō, -ere, petiī (-īvī), petītus

seem, *passive of* videō.

seize *(a town or place),* occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

seize *(arms),* capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus

send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus.

severe, gravis, -e.

shall, *sign of the future.*

ship, nāvis, -is, *f*

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

side, pars, partis, *f*

six, sex.

slave, servus, -ī, *m.*

slay, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

so, ita, **and so,** itaque.

so *(in such a manner),* sīc

so *(to such a degree),* tam.

soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*

son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*

soon, mox.

spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*

spiritedly, ācriter.

state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*

station, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus.
struggling, labōrāns, -antis.
surpass, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
swift, celer, celeris, celere
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
tall, altus, -a, -um
teach, doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
than, quam (172).
that, *demons pron.,* ille, illa, illud.
that, *rel pron ,* quī, quae, quod
that, *conj ,* ut.
thing, rēs, reī, *f*
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *or* arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
this, hīc, haec, hōc.
those, *plural of* ille *or* is.
thousand, mīlle (202, *c*).
through, per *with acc.*
till, dum, dōnec
too, *expressed by comp. deg.* (178).
town, oppidum, -ī, *n*
tribe, gēns, gentis, *f.*
trust, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus
two, duo, duae, duo (202).

U

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus.
unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
urge, hortor *or* cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
us. *See* ego (240).

V

very, *expressed by superl deg.* (178)
veteran, vetus, veteris.
victory, victōria, -ae, *f*
vigilance, vigilantia, -ae, *f*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*

W

wage (*war*), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus
wait, maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus
watchfulness, vigilantia, -ae, *f*, *or* dīligentia, -ae, *f*
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
well, bene.
what? quis, quae, quid?
what (*that which*), id quod.
when, cum.
where, ubi.
which, quī, quae, quod
who, quī, quae, quod.
who? quis, quae, quid?
why, cūr.
willing, be willing, volō, velle, voluī
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, volō, velle, voluī.
with, cum, *with abl.*
without, sine, *with abl*
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*
work, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
wound, volnus, -eris, *n*
wounded, volnerātus, -a, -um.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.
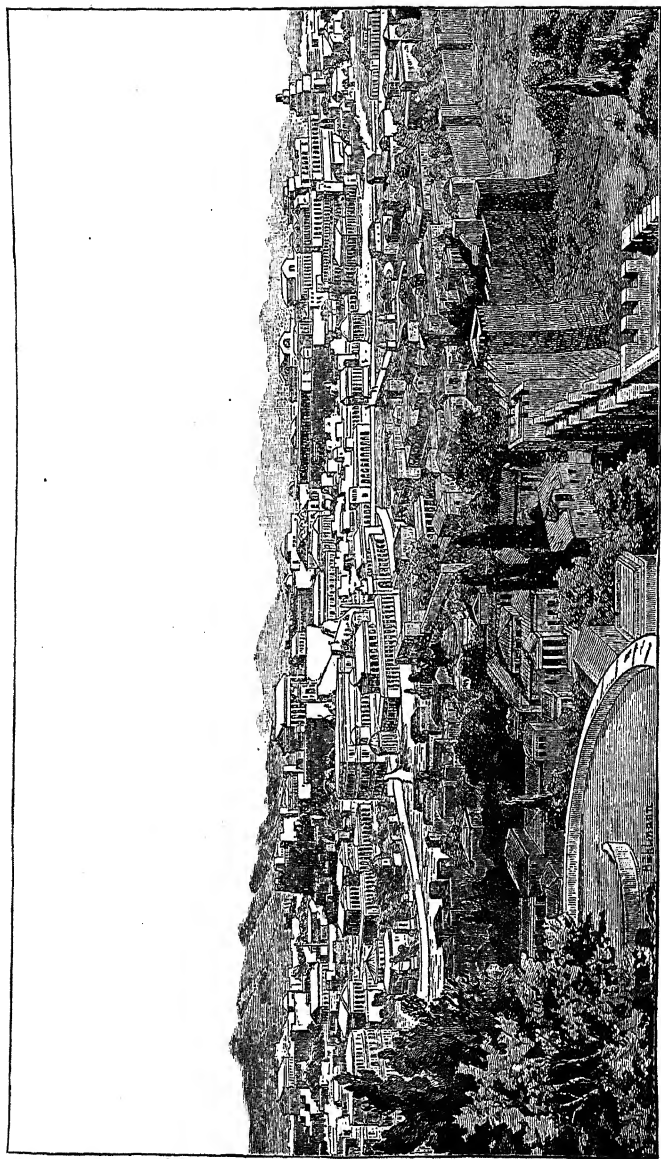
ROME FROM THE JANICULUM (TIME OF AURELIAN)

INDEX

ADVERTISEMENTS

LATIN

LATIN GRAMMAR

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar.   School edition. 340 pages   80 cents.

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar.   Complete   560 pages $1.20

BEGINNERS' BOOKS

Bain's First Latin Book.   343 pages.   75 cents

Barss's Beginning Latin.   331 pages. $1 00.

Moulton's Introductory Latin.   278 pages. $1 00.

CAESAR

Dotey's Latin Exercise Books on Caesar's Gallic War, Book I, 25 cents ; Books II, III and IV, each, 20 cents

Perrin's Caesar's Civil War, with Vocabulary. 340 pages $1 00.

Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War, Books I, II, III and IV   Contains Text, Notes, Grammatical Appendix and Vocabulary. 479 pages. $1 00.

Towle & Jenks's Caesar's Gallic War.   Complete   604 pages. $1.25

CICERO

Tunstall's Six Orations of Cicero.   Four Catilines, Manilian Law, Archias.   435 pages $1.00.

Tunstall's Cicero's Orations.   Same as above, with Verres, Milo, Marcellus, Ligarius and Ninth Philippic. 616 pages. $1.25.

LATIN COMPOSITION

Barss's Writing Latin, Book I.   Based on Caesar.   94 pages.   50 cents.

Barss's Writing Latin, Book II.   Based on Caesar and Cicero.   175 pages.   75 cents.

OVID

Anderson's Selections from Ovid, with Vocabulary.   264 pages. $1.00.

FOR COLLEGE WORK

Carter's Roman Elegiac Poets.   330 pages. $1.25.

Bowen's Cicero's De Amicitia.   151 pages.   75 cents.

Bowen's Cicero's De Senectute.   164 pages.   75 cents.

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Grammar.   Complete. 560 pages. $1.20.

Gildersleeve-Lodge Latin Composition.   201 pages. 75 cents.

Lease's Livy, Books I, XXI and XXII.   510 pages. $1.25.

Moore's Prose Exercises.   Revised.   80 pages.   50 cents.

Penick's Sallust's Catiline.   With vocabulary.   191 pages. $1.00.

Rockwood's Cicero's De Officiis.   183 pages.   90 cents.

Sihler's Cicero's Second Philippic.   157 pages.   80 cents.

Wilson's Juvenal.   372 pages. $1.25.

D. C. HEATH & CO., Publishers

BOSTON   NEW YORK   CHICAGO

Mathematics

Anthony and Ashley's Descriptive Geometry. $2 00

Barton's Plane Surveying. With complete tables $1 50

Barton's Theory of Equations. A treatise for college classes $1 50

Bauer and Brooke's Trigonometry. Plane and spherical $1.50.

Bowser's College Algebra   A full treatment of elementary and advanced topics. $1 50.

Bowser's Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry. 90 cts ; with tables, $1 40

Bowser's Treatise on Plane and Spherical Trigonometry $1.50

Bowser's Five-Place Logarithmic Tables   50 cts

Candy's Plane and Solid Analytic Geometry. $1 50. With supplement, $2 00

Fine's Number System in Algebra   Theoretical and historical. $1 00.

Gilbert's Algebra Lessons. Three numbers: No. 1, to Fractional Equations; No 2, through Quadratic Equations, No 3, Higher Algebra. Each number, per dozen, $1 44.

Hopkins's Plane Geometry. Follows the inductive method. 75 cts.

Howland's Elements of the Conic Sections   75 cts.

Lyman's Geometry Exercises. Supplementary work for drill   Per dozen, $1 60.

McCurdy's Exercise Book in Algebra   A thorough drill book. 60 cts

Nichols's Analytic Geometry. A treatise for college courses $1 25

Nichols's Calculus. Differential and Integral $2 00

Osborne's Differential and Integral Calculus   Revised. $2 00

Peterson and Baldwin's Problems in Algebra. For texts and reviews   30 cts.

Robbins's Surveying and Navigation. A brief and practical treatise   50 cts

Schwatt's Geometrical Treatment of Curves $1 00.

Waldo's Descriptive Geometry   Contains a large number of problems   80 cts

Wells's Academic Arithmetic   With or without answers $1 00

Wells's First Course in Algebra   A one-year course $1 00

Wells's Algebra for Secondary Schools $1.20.

Wells's Text-Book in Algebra. A maximum elementary course. $1.40

Wells's Essentials of Algebra   For secondary schools. $1.10.

Wells's Academic Algebra. With or without answers $1 08.

Wells's New Higher Algebra   For schools and colleges $1 32.

Wells's University Algebra. Octavo $1.50.

Wells's College Algebra. $1 50   Part II, beginning with quadratics $1.32

Wells's Advanced Course in Algebra. $1 50

Wells's New Geometry. $1 25. PLANE, 75 cts   SOLID, 75 cts.

Wells's Essentials of Geometry $1 25   PLANE, 75 cts. SOLID, 75 cts.

Wells's New Plane and Spherical Trigonometry. For colleges and technical schools $1.00. With six-place tables, $1.25   With Robbins's Surveying and Navigation, $1 50

Wells's Complete Trigonometry   Plane and Spherical. 90 cts   With tables, $1.08. PLANE, bound separately, 75 cts.

Wells's New Six-Place Logarithmic Tables. 60 cts

Wells's Four-Place Tables   25 cts

Wright's Exercises in Concrete Geometry   30 cts.

For Arithmetics see our list of books in Elementary Mathematics.

D. C. HEATH & CO., Publishers, Boston, New York, Chicago

Heath's English Classics.

Addison's Sir Roger de Coverley Papers. Edited by W H Hudson   Cloth   232 pages   Nine full-page illustrations and two maps.   35 cents.

Burke's Speech on Conciliation with America. Edited by A J George, Master in the Newton (Mass.) High School   Cloth   119 pages   20 cents

Carlyle's Essay on Burns. Edited, with introduction and notes, by Andrew J George   Cloth   159 pages   Illustrated   25 cents

Coleridge's Rime of the Ancient Mariner. Edited by Andrew J George   Cloth   96 pages.   Illustrated   20 cents.

Cooper's Last of the Mohicans. Edited by J G Wight, Principal Girls' High School, New York City.   Cloth   Illustrated   659 pages   50 cents.

De Quincey's Flight of a Tartar Tribe. Edited by G A Wauchope, Professor in the University of South Carolina.   Cloth   112 pages   25 cents

Dryden's Palamon and Arcite. Edited by William H Crawshaw, Professor in Colgate University.   Cloth   158 pages   Illustrated   25 cents

George Eliot's Silas Marner. Edited by G. A Wauchpoe, Professor in the University of South Carolina   Cloth   288 pages   Illustrated   35 cents

Goldsmith's Vicar of Wakefield.   With introduction and notes by W. H Hudson   Cloth   300 pages.   Seventeen illustrations by C E Brock   50 cents.

Irving's Life of Goldsmith.   Edited by H E Coblentz, South Division High School, Milwaukee   Cloth.   328 pages   Maps and illustrations   35 cents

Macaulay's Essay on Milton.   Edited by Albert Perry Walker, Master in the English High School, Boston   Cloth   146 pages   Illustrated.   25 cents

Macaulay's Essay on Addison.   Edited by Albert Perry Walker   Cloth.   192 pages.   Illustrated.   25 cents

Macaulay's Life of Johnson.   Edited by Albert Perry Walker   Cloth.   122 pages.   Illustrated.   25 cents

Milton's Paradise Lost.   Books I and II   Edited by Albert Perry Walker.   Cloth.   188 pages.   Illustrated   25 cents

Milton's Minor Poems.   Edited by Albert Perry Walker.   Cloth.   190 pages   Illustrated   25 cents

Pope's Translation of the Iliad.   Books I, vi, xxii, and xxiv   Edited by Paul Shorey, Professor in the Univ of Chicago.   Cloth   174 pages   Illus.   25 cents.

Scott's Ivanhoe.   Edited by Porter Lander MacClintock   Cloth.   556 pages.   Seventeen full-page illustrations by C E Brock   50 cents

Scott's Lady of the Lake.   Edited by L Dupont Syle, Professor in the University of California.   Cloth   216 pages.   Illus and map   35 cents.

Shakespeare.   See the *Arden Shakespeare.*   Per vol , 25 cents.

Tennyson's Enoch Arden, and the two Locksley Halls.   Edited by Calvin S Brown, University of Colorado   Cloth   168 pages   25 cents

Tennyson's Idylls of the King.   Four idylls, edited by Arthur Beatty, University of Wisconsin   Cloth.   190 pages.   Illus. and map.   25 cents

Tennyson's The Princess.   With introduction and notes by Andrew J. George.   Cloth.   148 pages   Illustrated.   25 cents

Webster's First Bunker Hill Oration.   With introduction and notes by Andrew J. George.   Cloth   55 pages   20 cents

---

D. C. HEATH & CO., Boston, New York, Chicago

Science

Austin's Clinical Chemistry. A manual of applied physiological chemistry. $1 75
Benton's Guide to General Chemistry. A manual for the laboratory   35 cents.
Boyer's Laboratory Manual in Biology. Treats of both animals and plants 80 cts
Boynton, Morse and Watson's Laboratory Manual in Chemistry. 50 cents.
Burrage and Bailey's School Sanitation and Decoration. Illustrated. $1.50.
Cheston, Gibson and Timmerman's Physics. Theoretical and descriptive $1 25.
Chute's Physical Laboratory Manual. Revised edition. Illustrated 80 cents
Chute's Practical Physics. For schools and colleges. $1.12.
Clark's Methods in Microscopy. Detailed descriptions of successful methods $1 60
Coit's Chemical Arithmetic. With a short system of analysis. 50 cents.
Coleman's Elements of Physics. For secondary schools. $1 25.
Colton's Physiology : Practical and Descriptive. Illustrated. $1.40.
Colton's Physiology : Briefer Course. For earlier years in high schools. Illus-
    trated. 90 cents.
Colton's Practical Physiology. A laboratory course. 60 cents.
Colton's Zoology : Descriptive and Experimental. Illustrated. $1 50. Part I,
    Descriptive, $1.00. Part II, Experimental, 60 cents
Fisher and Patterson's Elements of Physics. Experimental and descriptive. 60
    cents.
Grabfield and Burns's Chemical Problems. For review and drill. Paper, 25 cts.
Hyatt's Insecta. A practical manual for students and teachers. Illustrated. $1 25
Newell's Descriptive Chemistry. A full exposition of modern inorganic chem-
    istry. Illustrated $1.20. Part I, Without experiments. $1 00 Part II,
    Experiments. 40 cents.
Newell's Experimental Chemistry. A modern course for high schools and col-
    leges. $1.10
Orndorff's Laboratory Manual in Organic Chemistry. Boards. 35 cents.
Palmer's Questions and Problems in Chemistry. 20 cents.
Pepoon, Mitchell and Maxwell's Plant Life. A laboratory guide   50 cents.
Remsen's Organic Chemistry. $1 20.
Roberts's Stereo-Chemistry. Its development and present aspects. $1 00.
Sanford's Experimental Psychology. Part I. Sensation and perception. $1.50.
Schoch's Experiments and Discussions in Chemistry. 50 cents.
Shaler's First Book in Geology. Cloth, 60 cents Boards, 45 cents.
Shepard's Inorganic Chemistry. Descriptive and qualitative. $1.12.
Shepard's Briefer Course in Chemistry, with chapter on Organic Chemistry. 80 cts.
Shepard's Laboratory Note-Book. Boards. 35 cents
Spalding's Botany. Practical exercises in the study of plants. 80 cents.
Stevens's Introduction to Botany. Illustrated. $1.25. Key and Flora, 40 cents.
    Botany, with Key and Flora, $1 50.
Stevens's Chemistry Note-Book. Laboratory sheets and covers. 50 cents.
Venable's Short History of Chemistry. For students and the general reader. $1 00.
Weed and Crossman's Laboratory Guide in Zoology. Emphasises essentials. 60 cts
Whiting's Physical Measurement. Parts I–IV, in one volume. $3.75.
Whiting's Mathematical and Physical Tables. Paper 50 cents.

For elementary works see our list of books in Elementary Science.

D. C. HEATH & CO., Publishers, Boston, New York, Chicago

3674